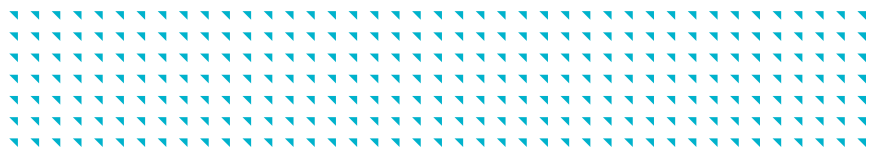




# CITROËN C5

HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE



# On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



## MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

---

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- > the language,
  - > the vehicle, its body style,
  - > the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.
- 

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.



This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of your C5 in all circumstances and in complete safety.

Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C5 range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

#### Key



safety warning



additional information



contributes to the protection of the environment

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,  
a complete product range,  
bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,  
for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,  
getting to know each system,  
each control, each setting,  
makes your trips, your journeys  
more comfortable and more enjoyable.

## Happy motoring!

<hr/> <p>Overview ■</p>	<hr/> <p>Access <b>2</b></p>	<hr/> <p>Driving <b>4</b></p>
	<p>Remote control key 44</p> <p>Alarm 49</p> <p>Electric windows 52</p> <p>Doors 54</p> <p>Boot 57</p>	<p>Driving recommendations 91</p> <p>Starting-switching off the engine 92</p> <p>Manual parking brake 95</p> <p>Electric parking brake 96</p> <p>Hill start assist 103</p> <p>6-speed manual gearbox 104</p> <p>Automatic gearbox 105</p> <p>Gear shift indicator 109</p> <p>Stop &amp; Start 110</p> <p>Tyre under-inflation detection 114</p> <p>Fixed centred controls steering wheel 116</p> <p>Speed limiter 118</p> <p>Cruise control 121</p> <p>Lane departure warning system 124</p> <p>Parking space sensors 125</p> <p>Parking sensors 127</p> <p>Reversing camera (Tourer) 129</p> <p>"Hydractive III +" electronic suspension 130</p>
<hr/> <p>Eco-driving ■</p>	<hr/> <p>Ease of use and comfort <b>3</b></p>	
<hr/> <p>Instruments <b>1</b></p>	<p>Front seats 60</p> <p>Steering wheel adjustment 65</p> <p>Mirrors 66</p> <p>Rear seats 68</p> <p>Ventilation 70</p> <p>Dual-zone digital air conditioning 72</p> <p>Courtesy lamps 76</p> <p>Interior mood lighting 77</p> <p>Panoramic sunroof (Tourer) 79</p> <p>Front fittings 81</p> <p>Mats 82</p> <p>Front armrest 83</p> <p>Rear fittings 84</p> <p>Boot fittings 86</p>	
<p>Instrument panels 14</p> <p>Trip computer 17</p> <p>Indicators 21</p> <p>Distance recorders 25</p> <p>Warning and indicator lamps 26</p> <p>Monochrome screen C 37</p> <p>Touch screen tablet 39</p>		



---

Lighting and visibility

Lighting controls	132
Automatic illumination of headlamps	136
Headlamp adjustment	137
Directional lighting	138
Wiper controls	140
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers	142

---

Safety

General safety recommendations	144
Direction indicators	145
Hazard warning lamps	145
Horn	146
Emergency or assistance call	146
Braking assistance systems	147
Trajectory control systems	148
Seat belts	151
Airbags	154
Child seats	159
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag	162
ISOFIX child seats	169
Child lock	173

---

Practical information

Fuel tank	175
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	177
Snow chains	178
Energy economy mode	179
Towing a trailer	180
Roof bars	182
Very cold climate protection	183
Cold climate screen	184
Bonnet	185
Petrol engines	186
Diesel engines	187
Checking levels	188
Checks	192
AdBlue® and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel)	195

---

In the event of a breakdown

Running out of fuel (Diesel)	203
Temporary puncture repair kit	204
Changing a wheel	211
Changing a bulb	218
Changing a fuse	229
12 V battery	235
Towing the vehicle	239

---

Technical data

Petrol engines	241
Petrol weights	242
Diesel engines	243
Diesel weights	244
Dimensions	245
Identification markings	249

---

Audio and telematics

Emergency or assistance	250
7-inch touch screen tablet	253
Audio system	315

---

Alphabetical index

# Exterior (Saloon)

Remote control key	44-48
- opening / closing	
- battery	
Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting	92-94
Alarm	49-51

Exterior lighting controls	132-136
Headlamp adjustment	137
Changing bulbs	218-221
- front lamps	
- Xenon headlamps	
- foglamps	
- direction indicator repeaters	
Lane departure warning system	124
Stop & Start	110-113
Very cold climate screen	184

Door mirrors	66
--------------	----

Doors	54-56
- opening / closing	
- central locking	
- emergency control	
Child lock	173
Electric windows	52-53

Tyre under-inflation detection	114-115
Braking assistance	147
Trajectory control	148-150
Tyre pressures	114, 249
Snow chains	178

Roof bars	182
-----------	-----

Fuel tank	175-176
Misfuel prevention	177

Boot	57
Temporary puncture repair kit	204-210
Changing a wheel	211-217
- tools	
- removing	
AdBlue®, topping-up	200-202

Front and/or rear parking sensors	127-128
Towbar	180-181
Towing	239-240

Changing bulbs	222-223, 226
- rear lamps	
- 3 <sup>rd</sup> brake lamp	
- number plate lamps	



# Exterior (Tourer)

Remote control key	44-48
- opening / closing	
- battery	
Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting	92-94
Alarm	49-51



Exterior lighting controls	132-136
Headlamp adjustment	137
Changing bulbs	218-221
- front lamps	
- Xenon headlamps	
- foglamps	
- direction indicator repeaters	
Lane departure warning system	124
Stop & Start	110-113
Very cold climate screen	184

Door mirrors	66
--------------	----

Doors	54-56
- opening / closing	
- central locking	
- emergency control	
Child lock	173
Electric windows	52-53

Tyre under-inflation detection	114-115
Braking assistance	147
Trajectory control	148-150
Tyre pressures	114, 249
Snow chains	178



Panoramic sunroof	79-80
Roof bars	182

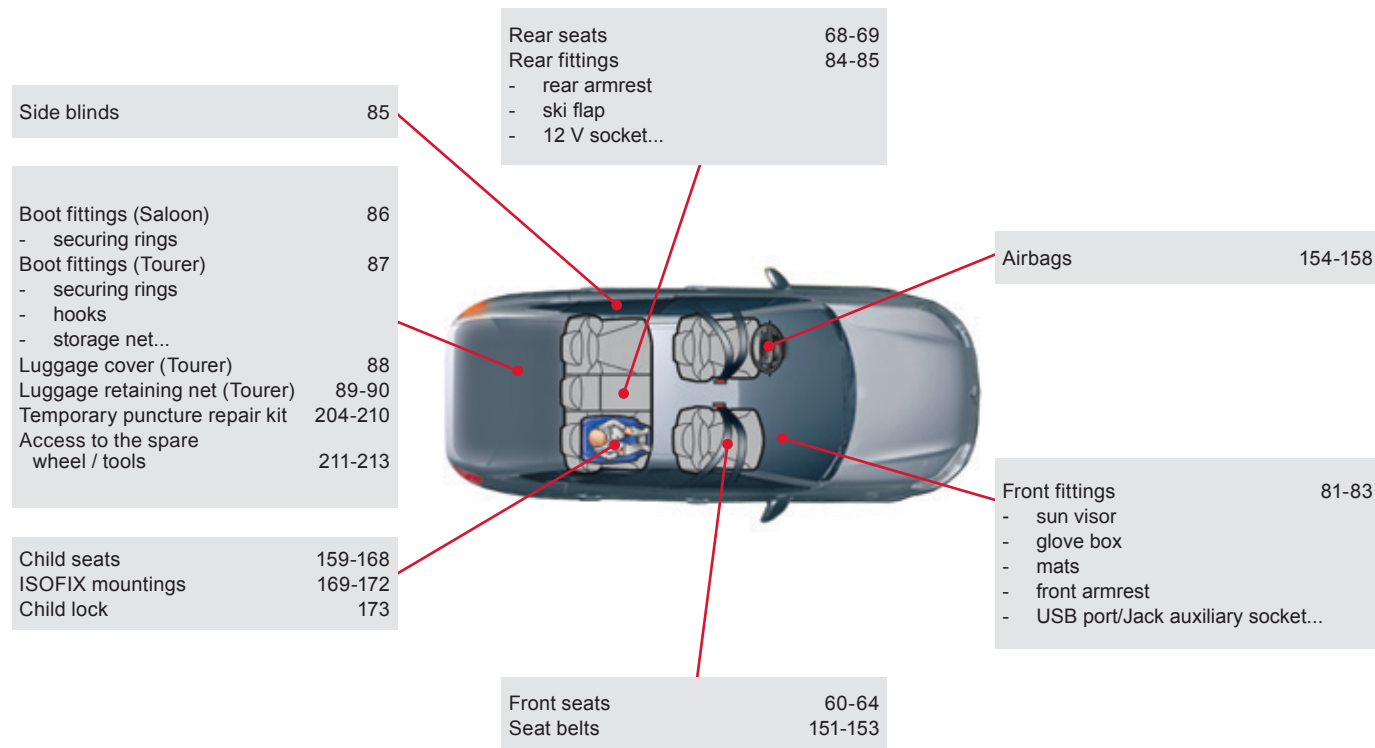
Fuel tank	175-176
Misfuel prevention	177

Boot	58-59
Reversing camera	129
Temporary puncture repair kit	204-210
Changing a wheel	211-217
- tools	
- removing	
AdBlue®, topping-up	200-202

Front and/or rear parking sensors	127-128
Towbar	180-181
Towing	239-240

Changing bulbs	224-226
- rear lamps	
- 3rd brake lamp	
- number plate lamps	

# Interior



# Instruments and controls

Instrument panels	14-16
Trip computer	17, 19
Warning lamps	26-36
Indicators	21-25
Buttons	25
- trip recorder	
- lighting dimmer	109
Gear shift indicator	
Parking space sensors	125-126

Dashboard fuses	229-232
-----------------	---------

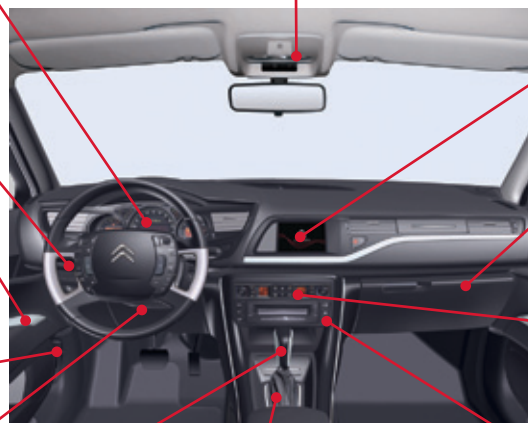
Windows	52-53
Door mirrors	66

Opening the bonnet	185
--------------------	-----

Steering wheel adjustment	65
---------------------------	----

Manual gearbox	104
Automatic gearbox	105-108
Hill start assist	103

Courtesy lamps	76-78
Rear view mirror	67
Interior mood lighting	77
Sun visor	81



Multifunction screens	37-43
Trip computer	18-19
Hazard warning lamps	145

Glove box	81
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag	155-156, 161-164

Ventilation	70-71
Dual-zone digital air conditioning	71-75

Emergency or assistance call	146, 250-251
Touch screen tablet	253-314
Setting the date/time	42-43
Audio system	315-332
Setting the date/time	38

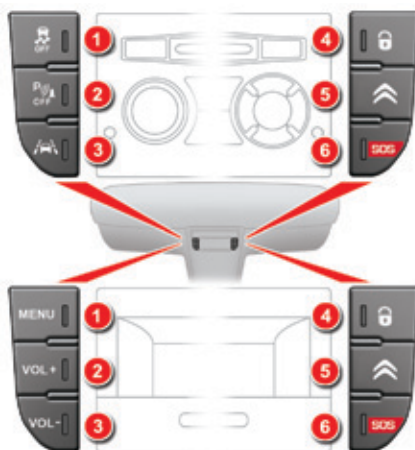
Parking brake, manual	95
Parking brake, electric	96-102
"Hydractive III +" electronic suspension	130-131

# Instruments and controls

## Central switch panels

### With the Audio system

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1. ASR/DSC                                  | 148-150      |
| 2. Visual and audible parking sensor system | 127-128      |
| 3. Lane departure warning system            | 124          |
| 4. Central locking                          | 54-55        |
| 5. Localised Assistance Call                | 146, 250-251 |
| 6. Localised Emergency Call                 | 146, 250-251 |



### With the touch screen tablet

- |  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 1. Main menu for the touch screen tablet | 39-40, 257   |
| 2. Increase volume                       | 40, 255      |
| 3. Decrease volume                       | 40, 255      |
| 4. Central locking                       | 54-55        |
| 5. Localised Assistance Call             | 146, 250-251 |
| 6. Localised Emergency Call              | 146, 250-251 |

## Side switch panel

### With the Audio system

- |                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| 1. CHECK (vehicle self-test)   | 20      |
| 2. Volumetric alarm            | 49-51   |
| 3. Parking space sensor system | 125-126 |
| 4. Stop & Start                | 110-113 |

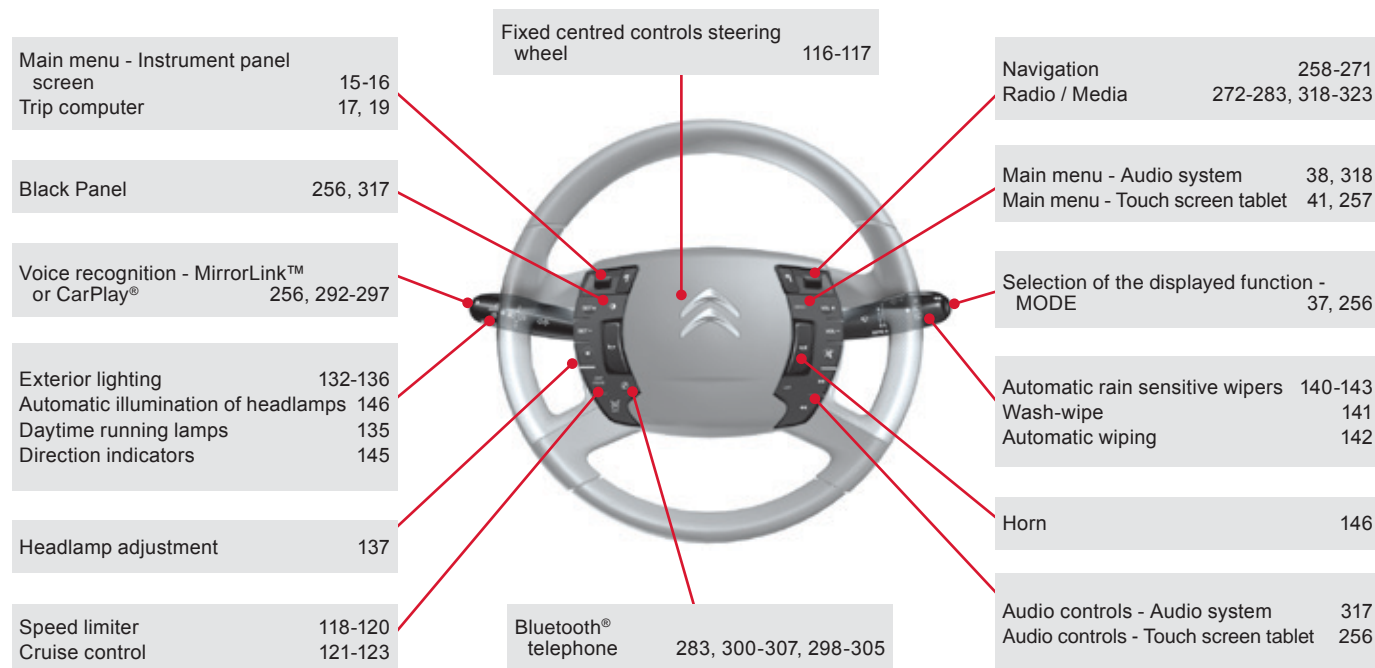


### With the touch screen tablet

- |                                  |         |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| 1. CHECK (vehicle self-test)     | 20      |
| 2. Volumetric alarm              | 49-51   |
| 3. Parking space sensor system   | 125-126 |
| 4. Lane departure warning system | 124     |
| 5. Stop & Start                  | 110-113 |
| 6. ASR/DSC                       | 148-150 |

# Instruments and controls

## Steering mounted controls





# Technical data - Maintenance

Running out of fuel - Diesel 203

Very cold climate protection 183

Checking the levels 188-191

- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash / headlamp wash fluid

AdBlue® 195-202

Changing bulbs 218-228

- front
- rear
- interior

Petrol engines 241  
 Petrol weights 242  
 Diesel engines 243  
 Diesel weights 244  
 Dimensions (Saloon) 245-246  
 Dimensions (Tourer) 247-248  
 Identification markings 249



Checking components 192-194

- battery
- air / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Engine compartment fuses 229, 233-234

Battery 235-238  
 Energy economy mode 179

Opening the bonnet 185  
 Petrol under-bonnet layout 186  
 Diesel under-bonnet layout 187

## Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

### Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

### Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic. Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

## Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference. Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

## Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrogen oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

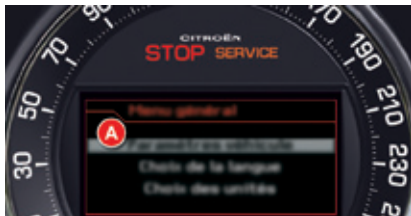
# Instrument panels - petrol and Diesel

Panel grouping together the dials and vehicle operation indicator and warning lamps.



- A. Fuel gauge
- B. Indicator:
  - Coolant temperature
  - Cruise control/Speed limiter information
- C. Analogue speedometer
- D. Rev counter
- E. Indicator:
  - Engine oil temperature
  - Gear efficiency.
  - Gear selector position and gear engaged (automatic gearbox).
- F. Controls:
  - Lighting dimmer
  - Reset the trip mileage recorder and service indicator
- G. Instrument panel screen indicating:
  - Depending on the page selected with the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel:
    - Digital speed repeater
    - Trip computer
    - Navigation (guidance) information
    - Display of message alerts
    - Engine oil level indicator
    - Service indicator
- Permanently:
  - Trip mileage recorder
  - Total mileage recorder
- Temporarily:
  - Service indicator.
  - Engine oil level indicator.
  - Alert messages.

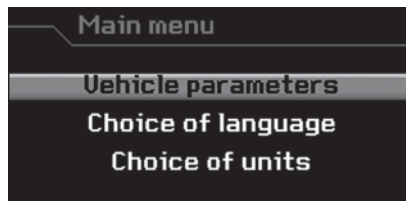
## Main menu



The instrument screen **A** is located in the centre of the instrument panel.

- With the vehicle stationary, you can access the main menu of the screen by quickly pressing on the left-hand thumb wheel **B** on the steering wheel.
- Whilst driving, the message "**Action impossible while driving**" is displayed in the instrument panel if you try to open the main menu.

The main menu allows you to programme certain vehicle functions\* and the instrument panel screen:



### "Vehicle parameters" menu\*

This allows you to access the settings for certain functions, grouped by category:

- Access to the vehicle.
- Lighting.
- Driving assistance.

### "Choice of language" menu

This allows you to choose the display and voice recognition language.

### "Choice of units" menu

This allows you to choose metric or imperial units.

\* Only with the Audio system.

## Access to the vehicle

With this menu selected, you can:

- ☞ activate or deactivate the driver welcome function.

For more information on **Ease of use and comfort**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ select the unlocking of all doors or just the driver's door.

For more information on **Access**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ activate or deactivate the automatic operation of the electric parking brake\*\*.

For more information on **Driving**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Lighting

With this menu selected, you can:

- ☞ activate or deactivate the operation of the daytime running lamps\*\*.
- ☞ activate or deactivate the guide-me-home lighting and set its period of operation.
- ☞ activate or deactivate the directional headlamps.

**i** For more information on the **Lighting control stalk** (in particular on the daytime running lamps and automatic guide-me-home lighting) or the **Directional lighting**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Driving assistance

With this menu selected, you can:

- ☞ activate or deactivate the operation of the rear wiper in reverse gear.

**i** For more information on the **Wiper control stalk**, refer to the corresponding section.

\*\* Depending on the country of sale.

# Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption...).

## In the instrument panel screen



### Information displays

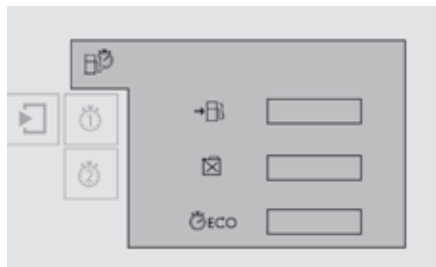
- ☞ Turn the left-hand thumb wheel **A** on the steering wheel to display the various trip computer tabs in succession:
  - The current information tab is displayed in zone **B** of the instrument panel screen, with:
    - the range,
    - the current fuel consumption,
    - the digital speed reading or the Stop & Start time counter.
  - The trip "1" tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel screen, with:
    - the distance travelled,
    - the average fuel consumption,
    - the average speed,
 for the first trip.
  - The trip "2" tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel screen, with:
    - the distance travelled,
    - the average fuel consumption,
    - the average speed,
 for the second trip.



### Trip reset

- ☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.
- Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.
- For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures and trip "2" for monthly figures.

## In the touch screen tablet



### Information display

**MENU** ☞ Press the **MENU** button.



☞ Select "**Driving**" to display the various tabs.

☞ Select the desired tab using your finger.



- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.



- The trip "1" tab with:
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.



- The trip "2" tab with:
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.



### Trip reset

☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures, and trip "2" for monthly figures.



## A few definitions...



### Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).



**i** This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

**i** If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.



**i** This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



### Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



### Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



### Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



### Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.



## Return to the main instrument panel screen display

Successive rotations of the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel allow you to return to the main instrument panel screen display (vehicle speed), via the navigation information screen, then the screen displaying only the total mileage and the trip mileage (bottom of screen).

## Display of navigation information in the instrument panel screen



You can display navigation information in the instrument panel screen by rotating the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel.

## Check function



This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the log of alerts.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The following information appears in turn in the instrument panel screen:

- Repeat of the service indicator.
- Repeat of the range indicator for the AdBlue® and the SCR system for BlueHDI Diesel versions.
- Repeat of the engine oil level indicator.
- Any alert messages.

## Indicators

### Engine oil temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1.  
In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2.  
In this event, slow down, and if necessary, stop the engine and check the levels (see the corresponding section).

### Coolant temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1.  
In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2, the engine coolant temperature warning lamp **A** and the **STOP** warning lamp come on in the instrument panel.  
**Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.** Switch off the ignition. **The cooling fan may continue to operate for a certain time.**  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
If the **SERVICE** warning lamp comes on, check the levels (see the corresponding section).

### Fuel gauge



On horizontal ground, illumination of the fuel low warning lamp indicates that you are at the reserve level.  
An alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

## Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last service indicator reset to zero, according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

**i** For BlueHDi Diesel versions, depending on the country of sale, the degree of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account.

### More than 1 700 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the instrument panel screen.

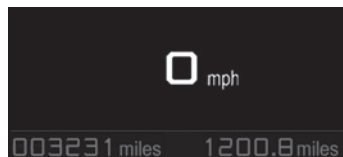
### Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on and a message is displayed in the instrument panel indicating the distance or time remaining before the next service is due.

**Example:** 1 900 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.  
When the ignition is switched on, the instrument panel screen temporarily indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off.**



### Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

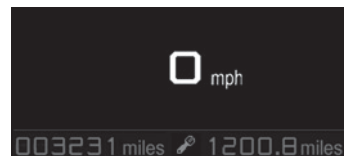
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations flashes and a message is displayed in the instrument panel indicating the distance or time remaining before the next service is due.

**Example:** 500 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

When the ignition is switched on, the instrument panel screen indicates for a few seconds:



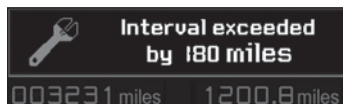
After the message disappears, **the spanner remains on** alongside the mileage recorder as a reminder that a service must be carried out soon.



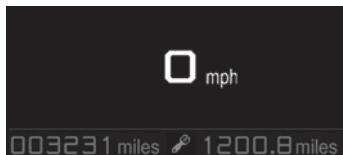
## Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the **spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

**Example:** the service is overdue by 300 miles. When the ignition is switched on, the instrument panel screen indicates:



The **spanner remains on** alongside the mileage recorder to indicate that a service is overdue.



**i** For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the **Service** warning lamp also comes on when the ignition is switched on.

The spanner may come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.

**i** For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner may also come on early, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

## Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

## Engine oil level indicator

The engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel screen for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

### Oil level correct



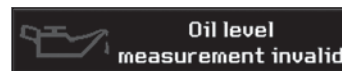
### Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.

**i** If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped-up to avoid damage to the engine.  
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel screen.  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.  
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.  
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

**i** When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country.

The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

### Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

### Trip distance recorder



It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

#### Resetting the trip recorder

- With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

## Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.

### Operation



- Press button **A** to decrease the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- Press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls.

### Deactivation

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the buttons does not have any effect.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction or fault (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

### **When the ignition is switched on**

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information for the warning lamp concerned.

### **Associated warnings**

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.






## Warning lamps





When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction or fault which requires action on the part of the driver.





The illumination of a warning lamp is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the fault. If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.





Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
<b>STOP</b>	<b>STOP</b>	fixed, associated with another warning lamp.	The illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox, engine oil pressure, engine coolant temperature or a major electrical fault.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		temporarily, accompanied by a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
<b>SERVICE</b>	<b>Service</b>	fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.


Warning/indicator lamp	is on	Cause	Action / Observations
  + 	<b>Braking</b>	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level is too low.  You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.  You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)</b>	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.  The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	<b>Electric parking brake</b>	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.  You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position <b>P</b> for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Electric parking brake fault</b>	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.  Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the <b>Electric parking brake</b> , refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake</b>	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (depending on the country of sale) via the vehicle parameters menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is no longer possible. For more information on the <b>Electric parking brake</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
	<b>Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)</b>	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Brake pad wear</b>	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the display screen.	The brake pads are at an advanced state of wear.	Have the brake pads replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + <b>SERVICE</b>	<b>Under-inflation</b>	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Maximum coolant temperature</b>	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping-up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	<b>Battery charge*</b>	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Seat belt not fastened / unfastened</b>	fixed.	The driver and/or the front/ rear passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	<b>Seat belts not fastened / unfastened</b>	fixed, associated with the seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.		The illuminated dots represent the not fastened / unfastened passengers. They come on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- fixed for 30 about seconds on starting the vehicle,</li> <li>- fixed from 0 to 12 mph (0 to 20 km/h) when driving,</li> <li>- flashing above 12 mph (20 km/h), accompanied by an audible signal for about 120 seconds.</li> </ul>



\* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning/indicator lamp	is on	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>Low fuel level</b>	fixed.	When it first comes on there remains <b>approximately 5 litres of fuel</b> in the tank.	<p>You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.</p> <p>This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made.</p> <p>Fuel tank capacity: 71 litres.</p> <p>Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.</p>
 <b>Engine autodiagnosis system</b>	fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	is on	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)</b>	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® tank topped-up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
	flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must <b>top-up the AdBlue® tank to avoid a breakdown</b> : go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
	flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must <b>top-up the AdBlue® tank</b> : go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the fluid tank.











For topping-up the AdBlue® fluid or for more information on **AdBlue®**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp	is on	Cause	Action / Observations
 + <b>SERVICE</b> + 	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
	flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop <b>without delay, to avoid a breakdown.</b>
	flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you <b>must</b> call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.




## Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.


Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed up.	
	Hazard warning lamps	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	Sidelamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	Main beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	Front foglamps	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward once to switch off the front foglamps.
	Rear foglamps	fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.



Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.
		flashing.	The parking brake is not fully applied or is released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the <b>Manual parking brake</b> or the <b>Electric parking brake</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
	Passenger's front airbag	fixed.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is in the "ON" position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat.	Turn the control switch to the "OFF" position to deactivate the front passenger's airbag. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is an airbag fault.
	Stop & Start	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable, or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on <b>Stop &amp; Start</b> , refer to the corresponding section.

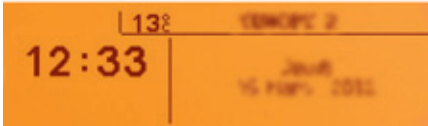
## Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

Warning/indicator lamp	is on	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>Passenger's front airbag</b>	fixed.	<p>The control, located in the glove box, is set to the <b>OFF</b> position.</p> <p>The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.</p> <p>You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the operation of the airbags.</p>	<p>Set the control to the <b>ON</b> position to activate the passenger's front airbag.</p> <p>In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position.</p>

# Monochrome screen C

## Displays in the screen



Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- exterior temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions,
- alert messages.



For safety reasons, it is recommended that the driver does not operate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

## Controls



- A. Access to the "Main Menu"
- B. Cancel the operation or return to the previous display
- C. Scroll through the screen menus  
Confirmation at the steering wheel
- D. Confirmation at the audio system control panel

## Selection of the type of information displayed (Mode)

Successive presses on the end of the wiper stalk or on the **MODE** button of the audio system permit selection of the type of information presented in the multifunction screen (date or audio system, CD, MP3).

## Main Menu

Press on the button **A** to view the "Main Menu" of the multifunction screen. This menu gives you access to the following functions:

- audio functions,
- display configuration,
- telephone (Bluetooth® hands-free kit).



## "Audio functions" menu

With the Audio system switched on, once this menu is selected, you can activate or deactivate functions associated with using the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText), CD (intros can, random play, CD repeat) or MP3 player (USB port / auxiliary Jack socket).

**i** For more information on the **Audio system** (and in particular the "Audio functions" application), refer to the corresponding section.



## "Display configuration" menu

With this menu selected, you have access to the following settings:

- brightness - video,
- date and time,
- choice of units.

## Adjusting the date and time



- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **C** to select the "Date and time" menu, then confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- ☞ Select the screen configuration using **C**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system
- ☞ Select the date and the time settings, using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.

- ☞ Press **C** to select the values you wish to modify. Confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen.



## "Bluetooth - Telephone - Audio" menu

With the Audio system switched on, once this menu is selected, you can configure your Bluetooth® hands-free kit (pairing), view the different telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your calls (start a call, end a call, double call, secret mode...).

**i** For more information on the **Audio system**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

# Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:

- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display settings menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of the exterior temperature (a blue snowflake appears if there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it also allows:

- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

**!** For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...). A light wipe is not enough.

The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.

This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.

- i** Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.  
Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.  
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen tablet.

## Principles

Press the **MENU** button, then the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.  
Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.



After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

## Menus

**MENU** Press this button on the control panel, then the menu button concerned.



### Navigation

Depending on trim level or country of sale, navigation may be unavailable, optional or standard.

For more information on **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Radio Media

For more information on **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Settings

Allows configuration of the display and the system.



### Internet

The connected services are accessible using the Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi or MirrorLink™ connections.

For more information on **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Telephone

For more information on **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Driving

Gives access to the trip computer.

Depending on version, allows settings to be adjusted for certain functions.


For more information on **Driving**, see the corresponding section.

1. Volume / mute.

For more information on **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.







## "Driving" menu

The systems with settings that can be adjusted are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	<b>Vehicle settings</b>	<p>Access to other functions with settings that can be adjusted. The functions are grouped together under three tabs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>"Driving assistance"</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Parking sensors" (Audible and visual parking assistance). For more information on the <b>Parking sensors</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> <li>• "Automatic parking brake" (Automatic electric parking brake). For more information on the <b>Electric parking brake</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> <li>• "Automatic rear wiper in reverse" (Activation of rear wiper coupled to reverse gear). For more information on the <b>Wiper control stalk</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- <b>"Lighting"</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Guide-me-home lighting" (Automatic guide-me-home lighting). For more information on the <b>Lighting control stalk</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> <li>• "Auto headlamp dip". For more information on the <b>Lighting control stalk</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> <li>• "LED daytime running lamps". For more information on the <b>Lighting control stalk</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- <b>"Vehicle access"</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Driver plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door). For more information on the <b>Remote control</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> <li>• "Driver welcome" (Welcome function). For more information on the <b>Front seats</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Select or deselect the tabs at the bottom of the screen to display the functions required.</p>

## "Settings" menu

The functions accessible in this menu are given in the table below.

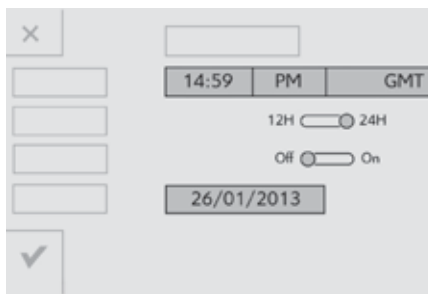
Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	<b>Audio settings</b>	Adjustment of volume, balance...
	<b>Turn off screen</b>	Turns off the display in the touch screen tablet (black screen). Pressing the black screen (or the <b>MENU</b> button) restores the display.
	<b>Time/Date</b>	Setting the date and time.
	<b>Screen settings</b>	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...) and the screen brightness.
	<b>Calculator</b>	Display the calculator.
	<b>Calendar</b>	Display the calendar.



## Setting the date and time



- ☞ Select the **"Settings"** menu.
- ☞ In the secondary page, press on **"Time/Date"**.



- ☞ Select **"Adjust time"** or **"Adjust date"**.

**i** When setting the time, you can select **"Satellite synchronisation"**, so that the time is adjusted automatically by satellite reception.



- ☞ Modify the settings using the number keypad, then confirm.
- ☞ Press **"Confirm"** to save and quit.

# Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to open the boot, locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

## Unfolding / Folding the key



- First press this button to unfold / fold the key.

## Unlocking the vehicle

### Complete unlocking using the remote control



- Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

### Complete unlocking using the key

- Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and lighting of the courtesy lamp (if the function is activated). According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

### Selective unlocking using the remote control



- Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

- Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by switching on of the courtesy lamp.

Depending on version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

The complete or selective unlocking is set via the vehicle parameters menu.

For more information on the **Instrument panels** (and in particular the "Vehicle parameters" menu), refer to the corresponding section.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

- Selective unlocking is not possible using the key.

## Boot

### Manual boot



- Press this button for more than one second to unlock and release the boot.



### Motorised boot



- Press this button for more than one second to unlock and trigger the automatic opening of the boot.



## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking using the remote control



- Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.
- Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.

### Normal locking using the key

- Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear to lock the vehicle. Locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by the courtesy lamp going off. According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

**i** If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place. When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock again automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened. When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the interior locking control indicator lamp. The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Deadlocking

### Using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

### Using the key

- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock to the rear of the vehicle to lock it and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear of the vehicle within five seconds to deadlock it.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.  
According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.



Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button.  
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the indicator lamp on the interior locking control.  
If one of the doors or the boot is open or has not been closed correctly, the central locking will not work.

## Locating your vehicle

- ☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by switching on of the interior lighting and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The vehicle remains locked.

## Operating problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control fault, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**. (For more information on **Starting-switching off the engine**, refer to the corresponding section).
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds, until the operation requested is triggered.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.



## Changing the battery

Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.

**SERVICE** If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a small screwdriver at the notch.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its housing.
- ☞ Place the new battery into its housing observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover into place.

## **i** Lost keys

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

## **Remote control**

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it. Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

## **Locking the vehicle**

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.

In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

## **Anti-theft protection**

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

## **When purchasing a second-hand vehicle**

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

## Alarm\*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

### - exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

### - interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

### - tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.



### Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

### Activation



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control. The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second. After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds. If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.

## Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

**i** To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

## Reactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.



## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

## Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Automatic activation\*

2 minutes after closing the last door or the boot, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm when entering the vehicle, first press the remote control unlocking button.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

# Electric windows



1. Driver's electric window control.
2. Passenger's electric window control.
3. Rear right electric window control.
4. Rear left electric window control.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.

## One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently, without passing the point of resistance. The window stops when the control is released.
- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly, beyond the point of resistance. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

**i** The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

## Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

**i** If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.**

## Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.**

## Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

A message in the instrument panel screen informs you of the activation / deactivation of the control.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors.

For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

- i** Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock.  
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no-one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

## Doors Opening

### From outside



- After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

**i** When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

### From inside



- Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

**i** With the selective unlocking activated:

- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only,
- the other door controls unlock the other doors and the boot.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

## Manual central locking

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.



### Locking

- Press button **A** to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp on the button comes on. It flashes when the doors are locked while stationary with the engine off.

**i** If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

## Unlocking

☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.

- i** If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.
- ☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic central locking

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and the boot while driving. You can activate or deactivate this function.



## Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and the boot lock automatically. If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place. If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

## Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors and the boot temporarily.

## Activation

☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds. A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

## Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds. A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

## Back-up control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

### Locking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

### Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.



### Locking the passenger doors

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

### Unlocking the passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

## Boot (Saloon)

### Opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever 1 and lift up the boot lid.

### Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/ unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

### Emergency boot release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.



### Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

## Boot (Tourer)

### Manual opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever **A** and lift up the tailgate.

### Motorised opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever **A**, or press of more than one second on button **B** of the remote control.

**i** Do not attempt to help the opening of the tailgate manually after pressing the control **A**.

### Manual closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior handle **C**.

### Motorised closing

- ☞ Press the push-button **D** to close the tailgate.

**i** Do not interrupt the closing of the tailgate; if any obstacle prevents it closing, the operation will stop and the tailgate will automatically rise by a few centimetres.



## Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/ unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (at a speed of less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

## Interrupting the opening / closing of the tailgate

When the tailgate is being opened or closed electrically, you can interrupt its movement at any point by pressing push-button **D**, the control **A** or button **B**.

You can then open or close the tailgate electrically or manually, if necessary moving it in the opposite direction to release it.

## Memorisation of an intermediate position

You can store an opening angle for the tailgate:

- ☞ Manually or automatically move the tailgate to the required position.
- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a short audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**.

## Cancelling the memorisation

With the tailgate in the intermediate position, you can cancel the stored position:

- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a long audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**. The tailgate will return to the fully open position at the next use.

## Electrical protection of the motor

If the tailgate is repeatedly opened and closed in quick succession, the motor can start to overheat and then cut out, preventing opening and closing of the tailgate.

Allow the motor to cool down for ten minutes without opening or closing the tailgate. Closing in manual back-up mode remains possible.



To avoid risk of injury, make sure that no one is in the vicinity of the boot while opening and closing.

If the tailgate is carrying extra weight (snow, bicycle carrier, etc.) there is a risk of it closing under this load. Support the tailgate or first unload the bicycle carrier or clear the snow.

When using an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock the vehicle so as to avoid any risk of motorised opening of the tailgate.

## Front seats

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, seat back and head restraint which can all be adjusted for optimum driving comfort.

### Manual adjustments

#### 1. Adjustments to the height and angle of the head restraint

To raise it, pull upwards.

To lower it, press on the release button **A** and simultaneously on the head restraint itself. The adjustment is correct when the top edge of the head restraint is at the same height as the top of the head. It is also tilt adjustable.

To remove it, press the release button **A**, then pull it upwards. It may be necessary to adjust the backrest angle.

#### 2. Adjustment of the backrest angle

Operate the control and adjust the position of the backrest to the front or to the rear.

#### 3. Adjustment of the seat height

Raise or lower the control the number of times required to obtain the desired position.

#### 4. Longitudinal adjustment of seat

Lift the control bar and adjust to the desired position.

#### 5. Adjustment of lumbar support

Turn the control and adjust to the desired position.



#### 6. Heated seat controls

The heated seats only operate when the engine is running.

**!** For your safety, do not drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

**!** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Electric adjustments

To adjust the electric seats, switch on the ignition or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into economy mode. Seat adjustments are also possible for a short period after opening one of the front doors or switching off the ignition.

### 1. Adjustment of the seat height and angle, and longitudinal position

Raise or lower the front of the control to adjust the seat cushion angle.

Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat.

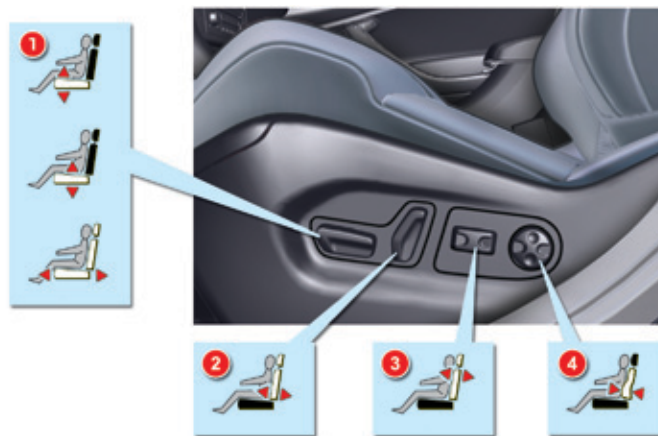
Slide the control forwards or backwards to move the seat forward or back.

### 2. Adjustment of the backrest angle

Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest angle.

### 3. Adjustment of the angle of the top of the backrest

Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the top of the backrest.



### 4. Adjustment of lumbar support

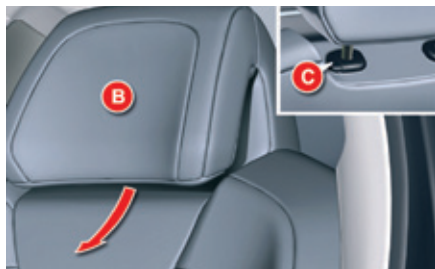
This function allows you to independently adjust the height and level of lumbar support.

Move the control:

- Forwards or backwards to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- Upwards or downwards to raise or lower the lumbar support zone.

**!** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Head restraint height and angle adjustments (electric seats)



- ☞ To adjust the angle of the head restraint, push back or pull forward section **B** of the head restraint until you reach the desired position.
- ☞ To raise it, pull upwards.
- ☞ To lower it, press on the control **C** to release it, and simultaneously on the head restraint itself.
- ☞ To remove it, press on the control **C** to release it, then pull it upwards.

## Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can operate separately.

- ☞ Use the corresponding adjustment dial, placed on the outer side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:



- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.

**!** Do not use the function if the seat is not occupied.  
Reduce the level of heating as soon as possible.  
Once the seat and passenger compartment are at a comfortable temperature, you can switch off the function; reducing electric current consumption also reduces fuel consumption.

- !** Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.  
There is a risk of burns for those that do not have normal perception of heat (illness, taking medicines, ...).  
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
- Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
  - if child seats are fitted.
- To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
  - do not kneel or stand on the seat,
  - do not place sharp objects on the seat,
  - do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
  - never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

## Massage function



This function provides the driver with a back massage. It only operates when the engine is running.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The warning lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in cycles of 6 minutes (4 minutes of massage followed by 2 minutes break). In total, the system will perform 10 cycles.

After 1 hour, the function is deactivated.

The warning lamp goes out.

## Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing on button **A**.

## Welcome function

The welcome function assists entry and exit from the vehicle.

After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the driver's seat moves back automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry to the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the seat moves forward to the memorised driving position.

When moving the seat, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

This function is deactivated by default.

You can activate or deactivate this function in the vehicle parameters menu.

## Storing driving positions



System which stores the settings of the driver's seat. It allows two positions to be stored. Use the buttons located on the door, driver's side.

When storing a driving position, the air conditioning settings are also memorised.

**i** For more information on **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Storing a position Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal confirms that the settings have been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

**!** For your safety, avoid storing a driving position while driving.

### Recalling a stored position Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal indicates the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

## Steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and reach to adapt the driving position to the size of the driver.

### Adjustment



As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

- ☞ First, adjust the driver's seat to the most suitable position.
- ☞ **When stationary**, lower the lever **A** to release the steering wheel adjustment.
- ☞ Adjust for height and reach.
- ☞ Raise the lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment.



After locking, if you press firmly on the steering wheel, a slight click may be heard.

# Mirrors

## Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded.

**!** As a safety measure, the mirrors must be adjusted to reduce the blind spot.

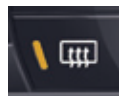
### Adjustment

With the ignition on:

- ☞ move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror,
- ☞ move control **B** in all four directions to adjust,
- ☞ return control **A** to the central position.

**i** The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

### Demisting / Defrosting



Demisting / defrosting of the door mirrors is associated with that of the rear screen.

For more information on **Mono-zone digital air conditioning** or **Dual-zone digital air conditioning** (and in particular "Rear Demisting - Defrosting"), refer to the corresponding section.

### Folding

- ☞ From outside; lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Control **A** must be pulled again.

### Unfolding

- ☞ From outside; unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the position is changed manually, a long press on control **A** re-engages the mirror.

**i** The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

### Manual model



#### Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

#### Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

### Electrochrome (automatic day/night) model



Using a sensor which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between day and night usage. It has an anti-dazzle system which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces any driver discomfort caused by the light beam of following vehicles, the sun...

In order to guarantee optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.



In vehicles fitted with electrochrome door mirrors, the system has an on/off button and an associated warning lamp.

#### On

- ☞ With the ignition on, press on button 1. The warning lamp 2 comes on and the mirror glass is in automatic mode.

#### Off

- ☞ Press on button 1. The warning lamp 2 goes off and the mirror glass remains in its lightest definition.

## Rear seats

Bench seat, the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

### Rear head restraints



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in line with the seat back.



Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

### Folding the seat



In order to fold a rear seat without any risk of damage, always start with the seat cushion, **never with the seat backrest:**

- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- ☞ Raise the front of the seat cushion 1.
- ☞ Tilt the seat cushion 1 fully against the front seat.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat backrest.
- ☞ Lower or remove the head restraints if necessary.



- ☞ Pull the control 2 forward to release the seat backrest 3.
- ☞ Fold the seat backrest 3 fully down.



The seat cushion 1 can be removed to increase the load volume.

## Returning the seat backrest to its original position

- ☞ Put the seat backrest **3** into the fully upright position and secure it.
- ☞ Return the seat cushion **1** to its original position.
- ☞ Refit the head restraints or put them back in place.



The red indicator on the control **2** should no longer be visible; if it is, push the seat backrest **3** fully back.

**!** When returning the rear seat to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.

## Removing the seat cushion



- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- ☞ Raise the front of the seat cushion **1**.
- ☞ Tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat.



- ☞ Extract the fixing brackets **2** from the seat cushion support by keeping it firmly towards the middle. Carry out the same operation for the other side.
- ☞ Remove the seat cushion **1** by pulling upwards.

## Refitting the seat cushion

- ☞ Position the seat cushion **1** vertically.
- ☞ Insert one of the fixing brackets **2** into one of the seat cushion supports. Carry out the same operation for the other side keeping it firmly towards the middle.
- ☞ Fully fold down the seat cushion **1**.
- ☞ Press on the seat cushion to secure it.

**3**

## Ventilation

**A.** Sunshine sensor.

**B.** Soft air diffusion grille.

The soft air diffusion grille located in the centre of the dashboard provides optimum distribution of the air for the front seats.

This system eliminates unpleasant air currents while maintaining an optimum temperature in the passenger compartment. To open the soft air diffusion grille, turn the wheel upwards.

To close the soft air diffusion grille, turn the wheel fully downwards.

In very hot weather, to obtain more satisfactory central and side ventilation, it is advisable to close the diffused air grille.

**C.** Cooled glove box.

**D.** Rear passenger vents.



# Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
- ☞ To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
  - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
  - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
  - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.  
We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
  - ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
  - ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.



Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A.

From 1st October 2016, depending on version and country of sale, contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A (gas capacity 0.525 kg +/- 0.025 kg, GWP index 1 430, 0.751 t equivalent CO<sub>2</sub>).



If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.



The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.



The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.



## Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.

To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Digital air conditioning (dual-zone)

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

**Dual-zone:** this is the independent regulation of the temperature and air distribution on the driver's side and the front passenger's side.

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature and the air distribution to suit their requirements.

The symbols and messages associated with the digital air conditioning controls appear in the display screen.



- 1a. Automatic operation on the driver's side
- 1b. Automatic operation on the passenger's side
- 2a. Temperature adjustment on the driver's side
- 2b. Temperature adjustment on the passenger's side
- 3a. Air distribution adjustment on the driver's side
- 3b. Air distribution adjustment on the passenger's side

- 4a. Driver's zone screen
- 4b. Passenger's zone screen
- 5. Air flow adjustment
- 6. Air conditioning On / Off
- 7. Recirculation of interior air
- 8. Rear demisting / defrosting
- 9. Front demisting / defrosting

### 1a-1b. Automatic operation



This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed by illumination of indicator lamp **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air conditioning.
- Automatic air recirculation.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open. Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of temperature regulation **2a** and **2b**, switches the system to manual mode. Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

## 2a-2b. Temperature adjustment



- ☞ Turn control **2a** to change the temperature on the driver's side and control **2b** to change the temperature on the passenger's side: to the right to increase or to the left to reduce it.

The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the screen configuration.

A setting around the **value 21** usually provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

**i** On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly obtain the level of comfort required.

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

### Control via the manual controls

- ☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of temperature regulation **2a** and **2b**. The indicator lamps **A** in the "AUTO" controls go off.

It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and may not provide optimum comfort.

To return to "AUTO" mode, press controls **1a** and **1b**. The indicator lamps **A** come on.

## 3a-3b. Air distribution adjustment



- ☞ Press control **3a** to change the distribution of the air flow on the driver's side.

- ☞ Press control **3b** to change the distribution of the air flow on the passenger's side. The indicator lamps corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

**i** Simultaneous display of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

## 5. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press the control:

- to increase the air flow,
- to reduce the air flow.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive illumination of the fan blade indicator lamps.

### Reducing the air flow to minimum switches the air conditioning system OFF.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

## 6. Air conditioning



The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active in order to obtain air conditioning.

☞ Press control **6**. The indicator lamp comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

## 7. Recirculation of interior air



☞ Press control **7** once to activate recycling of the interior air.

This function permits recirculation of the air and isolation of the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours.



**i** Avoid prolonged use of air recirculation - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

☞ Press button **7** again to activate automatic recirculation with pollution detection.



Using a pollution sensor, the system automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once it detects a certain level of pollutants in the interior air. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, the recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This system is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.

The system is inactive when the exterior temperature is below +5 °C to avoid the risk of formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

☞ Press control **7** a third time to return to the standard automatic mode (without pollution detection).



Recirculation of the interior air is automatically activated when engaging reverse or if the screenwash is used.

The system is inactive when the ambient temperature is below +5 °C to avoid the risk of formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

**i** You can store the settings of the air conditioning system. For more information on the **Front seats** (and in particular storing driving positions), refer to the corresponding section.



## 8. Rear demisting / defrosting



The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.

☞ Press control **8**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the mirrors. The indicator lamp comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to avoid excessive consumption of current and depending on the exterior temperature.

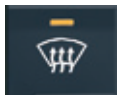
It may be stopped by pressing control **8** again or when the engine is switched off.

In this latter case, the demisting resumes if the engine is switched on again within one minute.



Switch off the rear screen and exterior mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary, as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

## 9. Front demisting / defrosting



In certain cases, the **"AUTO"** mode may not be sufficient to demist or defrost the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

☞ Press control **9** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator lamp comes on. This system controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windscreen and front side windows. Resuming manual control exits from the "Demisting" mode. It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting. Pressing one of the controls **1a** or **1b** returns the system to the **"AUTO"** mode.



With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.



When starting with the engine cold, air flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air. When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible. The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary. In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

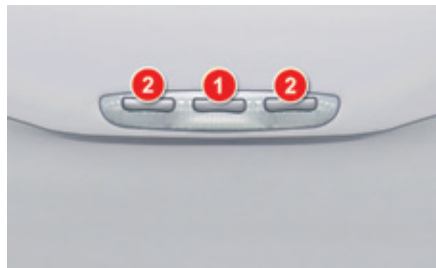
## Courtesy lamps

### Front courtesy lamp



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps

### Rear courtesy lamp



1. Rear courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Lighting off.



Lighting on.



In lighting on mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

### Map reading lamps

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

### Panoramic sunroof rear reading lamps (Tourer)



With the key in position or with the ignition on:

- ☞ Press the corresponding switch 1.

The reading lamp concerned comes on for ten minutes.

The rear reading lamps come on:

- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the vehicle is unlocked.

They switch off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on.

# Interior mood lighting

Your vehicle is equipped with interior mood lighting for the centre console and the door handles.



## Central console

The lamps are located on the roof console, near the front interior lamp. They illuminate the central console.

## Operation

These lamps are activated with the automatic illumination of headlamps, when the ambient light is poor. They are deactivated when the instrument panel is off.

The intensity of the lighting varies along with that of the instrument panel.

- ☞ Press buttons **A** to increase or reduce the intensity of the lighting.

## Lighting for door opening controls



This is located on the front and rear interior door opening controls.

The rear door opening controls lighting is deactivated if the child lock is on.

3

## Welcome lighting

The welcome lighting is made up of:

- The interior (roof) lamps.
- The floor lighting.
- The pavement lighting when a door is open.

### Floor lighting



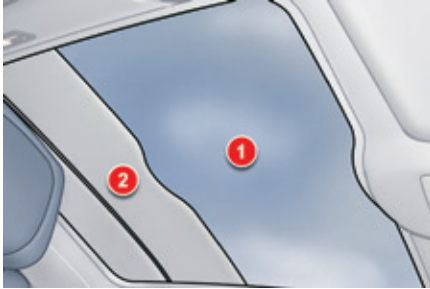
In the front of the vehicle, when a door is opened, this illuminates the interior of the vehicle.

### Pavement lighting



With the door open, this illuminates the ground next to the vehicle.

## Panoramic sunroof (Tourer)



This comprises a tinted glass panoramic area **1** to improve brightness and vision in the passenger compartment.

It is fitted with an electric blind **2** to help maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce noise.

### Sequential electric blind



#### Opening

☞ Press control **A**.

Pressing to the **1st notch** allows you to open the blind step by step.

Pressing to the **2nd notch** allows you to fully open the blind.

The blind stops in the closest pre-defined position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

#### Closing

☞ Press control **B**.

Press to the **first notch** to close the blind step by step.

Press to the **second notch** to close the blind completely.

The blind stops at the nearest pre-set position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

## Anti-pinch

If the blind meets an obstacle whilst closing, it stops and opens partially again.

You must re-initialise the anti-pinch function within 5 seconds of the blind stopping:

- ☞ press control **B** until the blind is fully closed (closing in steps of a few centimetres).

After a battery disconnection, or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

- ☞ press control **B** to the 2nd notch (fully closed),
- ☞ wait until the blind is fully closed,
- ☞ press control **B** for at least 3 seconds.

If the blind opens randomly during a closing operation, and straight after the blind stops:

- ☞ Press control **B** until the blind closes fully.

**During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.**

**!** In the event of anything being caught when the blind is moving, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do so, reverse the position of the control.

When the driver is operating the blind, he or she must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

## Front fittings

### Sun visor



- ☞ With the ignition on, lift the flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. To prevent dazzle from ahead, fold the visor downwards. It can be disengaged from its central fixing and pivoted over to the side windows if required.

### Cooled glove box



- ☞ To open the glove box, pull the handle and lower the lid. It has automatic illumination. The glove box has an air vent **A** that can be closed manually. It provides access to the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch **B**.



**The glove box should be kept closed when driving.**

### Driver's storage compartment



- ☞ Pull the grip towards you to open it.

3

## Mats



Mats are provided for the driver and front passenger.

### Removing

- ☞ Slide the front seat back as far as possible.
- ☞ Unclip the fixings.
- ☞ Remove the fixings, then the mat.

### Refitting

- ☞ Position the mat correctly.
- ☞ Clip the fixings.
- ☞ Check that the mat is held in place correctly.
- ☞ Return the front seat to its original position.



To avoid any interference with the pedals:

- only use mats which are suitable for the fixings already present in the vehicle; the use of these fixings is essential,
- never fit more than 1 mat.

The use of a mat not approved by CITROËN may obstruct access to the pedals and hinder the cruise control/speed limiter function.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a third fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.



## Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.



### Adjustment

To optimise your driving position:

- ☞ lift the control **A**,
- ☞ push the armrest forwards.

The armrest returns to its initial position when you push it rearwards.



### Compartment

The front armrest includes a cup holder and a USB port and/or auxiliary JACK socket\*.

- ☞ Lift the armrest for access to the cup holder, USB port and/or auxiliary JACK socket.

### USB port

The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.

The USB player reads your audio files, which are sent to the audio system so that they can be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

\* Depending on equipment.

The management of these files is with the steering mounted controls or from the audio system.

- i** When connected to the USB port, the portable device is recharged automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the rating of the vehicle's port.

The USB also allows a telephone to be connected by a MirrorLink™ connection, so that use can be made in the touch screen tablet of certain applications on the telephone.

### Auxiliary Jack socket

The auxiliary Jack socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital player, so that your audio files can be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

The management of these files is from your portable device.

- i** For more information on "**Audio and telematics**", refer to the corresponding section.

## Rear fittings

### Rear armrest

Comfort and storage system for the rear passengers.



### Cup-holder

The rear cup-holder **A** is located in the rear central armrest.

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull forwards to extract the cup-holder.

### Storage

- ☞ Lift up the upper part of the rear central armrest to access storage space **B**.

### 12 V accessory socket



This is located in the rear ashtray.  
Max power: 100 W.

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## Ski flap



A flap in the backrest, located to the rear of the armrest, facilitates the carrying of long objects.

## To open

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull the flap handle down.
- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

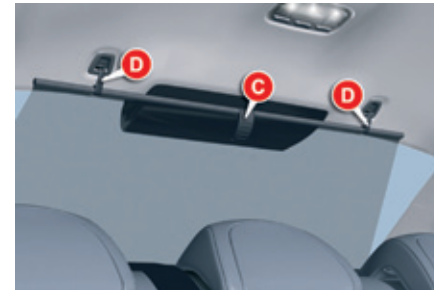
**i** Ensure that the objects are well secured and that they do not impede the operation of the gear lever.

## Side blinds



- ☞ Pull the tab **A** to unreel the blind.
- ☞ Position the blind on the hook **B**.

## Rear blind (Saloon)



- ☞ Pull the tab **C** to unreel the blind.
- ☞ Position the blind on the hooks **D**.

3

## Boot fittings (Saloon)



- 1. Boot floor**  
(storage for the spare wheel and the tools)



- 2. Boot lamp**  
**3. Open storage or Closed storage well**  
For vehicles so equipped, this is the location for the Hi-Fi amplifier.

### Luggage securing rings

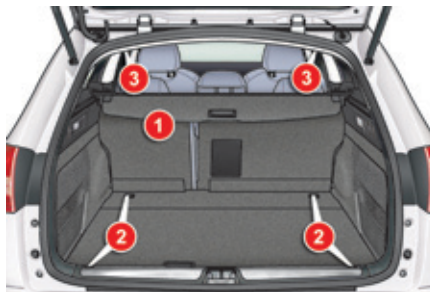
- ☞ Use the 4 securing rings on the boot floor to secure your luggage.

**!** For safety reasons in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forward in the boot as possible.

## Boot fittings (Tourer)



1. **Hook**  
For shopping bags.
2. **Torch**  
To recharge, return it to its housing.
3. **Storage net**

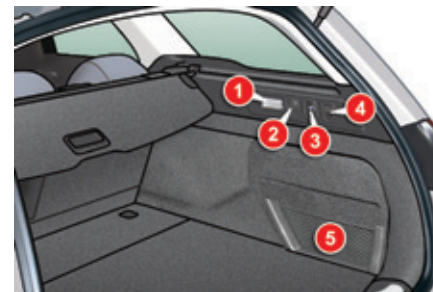


1. **Luggage cover**  
(see details on following page)
2. **Luggage securing rings**  
Use the 4 securing rings provided on the boot floor to secure your loads.



As a safety measure in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards as possible.

3. **Hooks**  
These allow a high load net to be fitted (see details on following page).



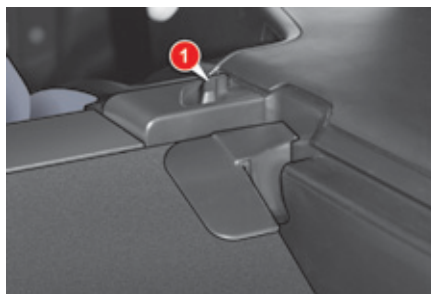
1. **Boot lamp**
2. **12 V accessory socket (100 W maximum)**  
Cigarette lighter type 12 volt socket. It is located on the rear right-hand trim.
3. **Loading height control**  
You can change the height of the vehicle to make loading or unloading the boot easier.
4. **Hook**  
For shopping bags.
5. **Storage net or Closed storage well**  
For vehicles so equipped, this is the location for the Hi-Fi amplifier.

## Luggage cover (Tourer)



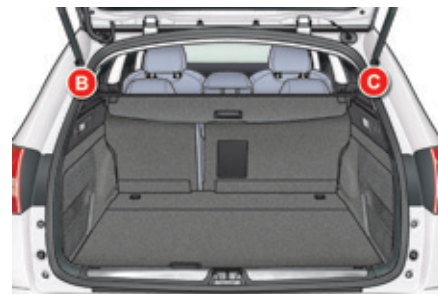
### To reel in

- ☞ Press the handle (PRESS) gently. The luggage cover reels in automatically. The moving part **A** can be folded along the rear bench seat backrest.



### To remove

- ☞ Compress the control **1** and lift the luggage cover on the right then on the left to remove it.



### To install

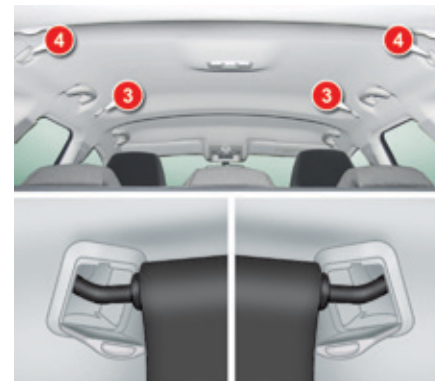
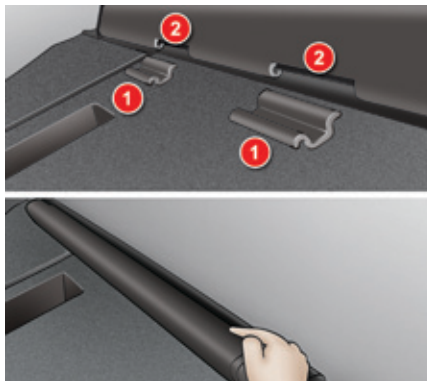
- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the luggage cover roller in its location **B** behind the rear bench seat.
- ☞ Compress the roller control **1** and put the roller in place in its location **C** on the right.
- ☞ Release the control to secure the luggage cover.
- ☞ Unreel it to its fastening on the rear pillar.

## High load retaining net (Tourer)

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.



### Installation

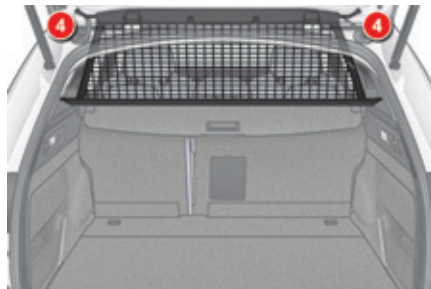
- ☞ Fold down the backrests of the rear seats.
- ☞ Position the high load retaining net roller above the two rails 1 located behind the rear seats (2/3 bench seat). The two notches 2 must be placed above the two rails.
- ☞ Slide the two rails 1 into the notches 2 and push the roller (lengthways) from right to left to secure it.
- ☞ Reposition the rear seat backrests.



### Row 1

To use it in row 1:

- ☞ fold down the backrests of the rear seats,
- ☞ open the covers **3** of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net and position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover **3**,
- ☞ pull the high load retaining net's metal bar to position the other hook in the second fixing cover.



### Row 2

To use it in row 2:

- ☞ open the covers **4** of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ from the rear bench seat, unroll the high load retaining net, pushing it to detach it from the retaining hooks,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail, located inside the cover **4**,
- ☞ position the other hook in the second fixing cover and pull the metal bar towards you.



## Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

### Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Important!

**!** Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system! Risk of fire!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or run the engine over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc.

**!** Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

# Starting-switching off the engine

## Anti-theft protection

### Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

**SERVICE** In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

**i** Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

## Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

## Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged.

Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

**!** Do not attach heavy objects to the key or remote control: by weighing down on the key when in the ignition switch, this could cause a fault.  
In addition, a heavy or sharp object could interfere with the deployment of the knee airbag or be thrown about and cause serious injuries in the event of deployment of the knee airbag.

## Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- ☞ depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),  
or
- ☞ press the brake pedal firmly (automatic gearbox),
- ☞ insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- ☞ unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

**i** In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**i** In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death!  
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position 1.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

**i** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

**!** Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

**i** When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

## Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

**i** For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

## **i** Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

## Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

**i** Do not flick the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition. This could cause serious damage to the turbocharger(s).

# Manual parking brake

Mechanical device for immobilising the vehicle when stationary.



## Application

- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

To facilitate the action on the lever, you are recommended to press the brake pedal at the same time.



In all circumstances, as a precautionary measure, engage first gear.  
On steep gradients, turn the steering wheel towards the pavement.

## Release

- ☞ Press on the end of the lever whilst pulling it then lower it fully.



This warning lamp comes on if the parking brake is engaged or not fully released.

**If the parking brake is released**, the illumination of this warning lamp along with the **STOP** warning lamp indicates that the brake fluid level is low or a fault with the brake force distributor.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **Automatic**  
Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (activated by default).
- **Manual**  
Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible by pulling control lever **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

## Automatic operation

### Application with the engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "**Parking brake applied**" in the instrument panel screen.

The noise of operation will confirm to you the application / release of the electric parking brake.

**!** Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on.  
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

### Application with the engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle you need to manually apply the parking brake by **pulling** the control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "**Parking brake applied**" in the instrument panel screen.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.



**!** Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on.

## Release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively as the vehicle moves off**:

- ☞ with a **manual gearbox (first gear or reverse gear engaged)**, press down fully on the clutch pedal, then press on the accelerator pedal and move off,
- ☞ with an **automatic gearbox**, accelerate with the selector in position **D, M or R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  - warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
-  - this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "**Parking brake released**" in the instrument panel screen.

**!** When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily (particularly when starting the engine, including in neutral), as you may release the parking brake. Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control.

## Activation / Deactivation of the automatic functions

Depending on the country of sale, automatic application when switching off the engine and automatic release when moving off can be deactivated. The activation / deactivation is done in the vehicle parameters menu.



Deactivation of these functions is signalled by this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the parking brake must be applied and released manually.



In some special circumstances, with the engine not running, (towing, icy conditions...) the automatic parking brake can be released manually, with the key in the running position.



If the vehicle parameters menu does not have the option to activate / deactivate the automatic functions, this can be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Manual operation

Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible.



### Application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** the control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "**Parking brake applied**" in the instrument panel screen.

**!** When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied.

### Release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, **push then release** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "**Parking brake released**" in the instrument panel screen.

If you push control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the message "**Foot on brake**" will be displayed in the instrument panel screen.

**!** When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.



## Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "**Max application of the parking brake**" and an audible signal is heard.

### Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the effective gradient you are parked on is variable (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).

### Please note...

- in the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park,
- after a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

## Particular situations

In certain situations (starting the engine...), the parking brake can automatically alter its level of application. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pushing** then **releasing** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp **P** in the control lever and the warning lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of a message "**Parking brake released**" in the instrument panel screen.

To ensure correct operation of the parking brake and therefore your safety, the number of successive application / release operations is limited to eight.

If this number is exceeded, you are warned by the message "**Parking brake faulty**" and a warning lamp flashes.



In the event of a battery failure, it will not be possible to operate the electric parking brake.

As a safety measure if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear or by placing a chock against one of the wheels.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Dynamic emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction) pull and hold control lever **A** to stop the vehicle. The dynamic stability control system (DSC) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If there is a fault with the dynamic emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed in the instrument panel screen:

- **"Parking brake faulty".**
- **"Parking brake control faulty".**



If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull - release" actions on control lever **A**.



The dynamic emergency braking should only be used in exceptional circumstances.













If it is not possible to immobilise the vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Operating faults



If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
1	<p>Electric parking brake problem and display of the message "<b>Parking brake faulty</b>" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  <b>SERVICE</b>	<p>If the electric parking brake problem warning lamp and the service warning lamp come on, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).</p>
2	<p>Display of the messages "<b>Parking brake faulty</b>" and "<b>Anti roll-back fault</b>" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  <b>SERVICE</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The automatic functions are deactivated.</li> <li>- The hill start assist is not available.</li> <li>- The electric parking brake is only available manually.</li> </ul>
3	<p>Display of the messages "<b>Parking brake faulty</b>" and "<b>Anti roll-back fault</b>" and of the following warning lamp:</p> <p><b>SERVICE</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Manual release of the electric parking brake is not available.</li> <li>- The hill start assist is not available.</li> <li>- The automatic functions and manual application are still available.</li> </ul>

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
4	<p>Display of the messages <b>"Parking brake faulty"</b> and <b>"Anti roll-back fault"</b> and of the following warning lamps:</p> <p>   </p> <p>and/or  flashing </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The automatic functions are deactivated.</li> <li>- The hill start assist is not available.</li> </ul> <p>To apply the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition.</li> <li>☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application.</li> <li>☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps are on.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application may take longer than in normal operation.</li> <li>- If the warning lamp <b>(!)</b> flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</li> </ul> <p>To release the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Switch on the ignition.</li> <li>☞ Push the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.</li> </ul>
5	<p>Display of the message <b>"Parking brake control faulty – automatic mode activated"</b> and of the following warning lamps:</p> <p>  and/or  flashing </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available.</li> <li>- Manual application / release of the electric parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable.</li> </ul>
6	<p>Display of the message <b>"Parking brake faulty"</b> and of the following warning lamp:</p> <p>flashing</p> <p></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application of the parking brake is not guaranteed.</li> <li>- The parking brake is temporarily unavailable.</li> </ul> <p>It this situation arises:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Wait approximately 3 minutes.</li> <li>☞ After 3 minutes, if the warning lamp is still flashing, try to reinitialise the parking brake, either by pushing and releasing the control <b>A</b> while pressing the brake pedal or by means of a long pull on control lever <b>A</b>.</li> </ul>
7	<p>Battery problem</p> <p></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Illumination of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle.</li> <li>- Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.</li> </ul>

# Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in certain conditions on a gradient,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

## Operation



**On an ascending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:**

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.



**On a descending gradient, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.**



Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually and ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (in the instrument panel) is on fixed (not flashing).

## 6-speed manual gearbox

### Engaging 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear

- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear.

**!** Failure to follow this advice may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engagement of 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> gear by mistake).

### Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

**i** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

**!** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

# Automatic gearbox



Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by the sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are provided:

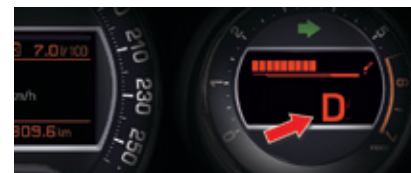
- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox, associated with:
  - a **SPORT** programme for a more dynamic driving style,
  - a **SNOW** programme to improve driving when the grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

## Mode selection



- ☞ Automatic mode: gear selector in position **D**.
- ☞ Manual mode: gear selector in position **M**.
- ☞ **SPORT** programme: gear selector in position **D** and button **A** pressed,
- ☞ **SNOW** programme: gear selector in position **D** and button **B** pressed.

## Displays in the instrument panel



The position of the gear selector and the driving mode are displayed in the right-hand dial of the instrument panel.

A position grille associated with the gear selector allows you to view the selected position.



As a safety measure:

- position **P** can be disengaged only by pressing the brake pedal,
- when a door is opened, an audible signal is heard if the gear selector is not in position **P**,
- always make sure that the gear selector is in position **P** before you leave your vehicle.

If the gearbox is in position **P** but the position of the gear selector is different, reposition the gear selector at **P** so that you can start the vehicle.

## Moving off

- ☞ To start the engine, the gear selector must be in position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Operate the starter.
- ☞ When the engine is running, place the gear selector at **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Check in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and accelerate.
- ☞ To avoid a possible difference between the position of the gear selector and the actual position of the gearbox, always come out of position **P** with the ignition on and brake pedal applied.

Otherwise, when the ignition is on or the engine is running:

- ☞ reposition the gear selector at position **P**,
- ☞ put your foot on the brake pedal and then select the gear you want.

## Park

**P**

This position of the gear selector is used to prevent the vehicle from moving when you are stationary.

- ☞ To select position **P**, move the gear selector back to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
- ☞ To exit position **P**, move the gear selector to the right and then to the position you want.
- ☞ Only engage this position when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Make sure that the gear selector is correctly positioned.

## Reverse gear

**R**

Only engage this position when the vehicle is stationary. To prevent snatching, do not accelerate too soon after selection.

## Neutral

**N**

Never select position **N** if the vehicle is moving.



Never select position **P** or **R** if the vehicle is not stationary. If, while the vehicle is moving, position **N** is engaged inadvertently, allow the engine to idle before engaging position **D** or **M**.



## Automatic operation



- ☞ Move the gear selector to position **D**.  
The gearbox continuously selects the gear that is best suited to the following conditions:
  - driving style,
  - road profile,
  - vehicle load.

The gearbox operates without requiring any intervention on your part.

For certain manoeuvres (for example overtaking), you can obtain maximum acceleration by pressing the accelerator pedal hard down past the point of resistance, which then produces an automatic change down to a lower gear.

When braking, the gearbox may change down automatically in order to provide effective engine braking.

If you lift your foot off the accelerator abruptly, the gearbox will not engage a higher gear.

## Manual operation



Position of the gear selector for manual gear changing.

- ☞ Move the gear selector to position **M**.
- ☞ Push the gear selector towards the "+" sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the gear selector towards the "-" sign to change down a gear.

If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically, to first gear if the speed drops sufficiently. In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes. Gear change instructions are accepted only if the engine speed permits it.

The **SPORT** and **SNOW** programmes do not operate in manual mode.

## SPORT and SNOW programmes



These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very particular conditions of use.

### SPORT programme "S"

☞ With the gear selector in position **D** and the engine running, press button **A**.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic driving style.



**S** appears in the instrument panel.

### SNOW programme "❄"

☞ With the gear selector in position **D** and the engine running, press button **B**.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme makes moving off easier and improves traction in conditions of poor grip.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

### Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to exit from the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.



A strong snatch may be felt when selecting **R** for reverse gear. In the event of a fault, the gearbox is blocked in one gear; do not exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h). Do not turn off the engine while the gear selector is in position **D** or **R**. Never press the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously. Braking and acceleration should be done with the right foot only. Pressing both pedals simultaneously may damage the gearbox. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



If the temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left running at idle for four minutes, in order to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

# Gear shift indicator\*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system. This function cannot be deactivated.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

- i** The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).  
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
  - engaging reverse gear,
  - changing down.

Example:



- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.

\* Depending on engine.

## Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams...).

The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off.

The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

### Operation

#### Going into engine STOP mode



The "ECO" warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h) with BlueHDi Diesel versions, when you put the gear selector into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.



If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.



Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.



For your comfort, when parking, STOP is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse. The Stop & Start system does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering...

### Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (up or down),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



In this case, the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

### Going into engine START mode



The "ECO" warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.



With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

### Special cases: START invoked automatically

For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



In this case the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Deactivation / Manual reactivation



In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is on.

- i** If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts.  
The Stop & Start system is automatically reactivated every time the ignition is switched on.

At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Press the "ECO OFF" switch again.

- i** The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and the display of a message.

### ! Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.



### ! Driving on flooded roads

Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

## Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the "**ECO OFF**" switch warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then comes on continuously. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear selector into position **N** and to put your foot on the brake pedal.

It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key.

The Stop & Start requires the use of a 12 V battery of special technology and characteristics.

All work on this type of battery must only be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving. The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.

Pressure sensors are located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).

The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

! The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

☘ Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label. The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label. For more information on **Identification markings**, including the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.



## Under-inflation alert



The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.

In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, depending on equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre.  
Do not rely on just a visual check.



If you have a compressor (e.g. the one in the temporary puncture repair kit), check the four tyre pressures when cold. If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.

or



In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).



The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.

The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

## Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (e.g. a space-saver or steel spare wheel).



Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.



Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (e.g. fitting snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Fixed centred controls steering wheel



	Rotate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scroll the various pages of information in the instrument panel screen.</li> <li>• Move through the various menus in the instrument panel screen.</li> <li>• Increase / Decrease values.</li> </ul>
1	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open the main menu in the instrument panel screen (<b>only when stationary</b>).</li> <li>• Select and confirm information.</li> </ul>
	Long press	Reset the trip data for the trip selected (if the corresponding trip computer page is displayed).
2	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel the current operation.</li> <li>• Return to the previous screen in the instrument panel screen.</li> </ul>
	Long press	Return to the initial page in the instrument panel screen.
3	Short press	Increase the speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) / Store the speed.
	Press and hold	Increase the speed in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h).
4	Short press	Decrease the speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) / Store the speed.
	Press and hold	Decrease the speed in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h).
5	Short press	Suspend or resume cruise control/speed limiter (depending on the mode selected).
6	Short press	Select cruise control or speed limiter mode (the cycle on this button will always begin with selection of the speed limiter).
7	Short press	Deactivate cruise control/speed limiter.
8	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accept an incoming call.</li> <li>• End the current call.</li> <li>• Open the telephone short-cut menu.</li> <li>• Confirm in the list and in the telephone menu.</li> </ul>
	Long press	Reject an incoming call.
9	Short press / Long press	Horn.
10	Short press	Activate / Deactivate Black Panel mode (comfortable night driving display).
11	Long press	Activate voice recognition on the telephone via MirrorLink.



12	Rotate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Radio: Scroll the pre-set stations.</li> <li>CD / MP3 / jukebox: Scroll through tracks or folders.</li> <li>Multifunction screen menus: Move and increase / decrease.</li> </ul>
	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Multifunction screen menus: confirm the selection.</li> <li>Open the short-cut menus (depending on the page displayed in the multifunction screen).</li> </ul>
13	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cancel the current operation and return to the previous display in the multifunction screen.</li> <li>Reject an incoming call.</li> </ul>
	Long press	Return to the initial page in the multifunction screen.
14	Short press	Access to the multifunction screen main menu.
15	Short press / Press and hold	Volume increase.
16	Short press / Press and hold	Volume decrease.
17	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First press: mute.</li> <li>Second press: restore sound.</li> </ul>
18	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Radio: Automatic search of higher frequencies.</li> <li>CD / MP3 / jukebox: Search for the next track.</li> </ul>
	Maintained press	CD / MP3 / jukebox: fast play in fast forward.
19	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Radio: Automatic search of lower frequencies.</li> <li>CD / MP3 / jukebox: Search for the previous track.</li> </ul>
	Press and hold	CD / MP3 / jukebox: Fast play in rewind.
20	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Radio: display the list of radio stations.</li> <li>CD / MP3: display the list of tracks and folders.</li> <li>Jukebox: display the list of albums.</li> </ul>
	Long press	Update the list of radio stations.
21	Short press / Long press	Horn.
22	Short press	MODE: select the function displayed in the multifunction screen.

## Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the limit speed is reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect. The speed limiter is switched on manually: a speed of at least 20 mph (approx. 30 km/h) must be programmed.

**!** The speed limiter can in no circumstances replace keeping to speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

### Steering mounted controls



The speed limiter switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

1. Increase the programmed speed.
2. Decrease the programmed speed.
3. Speed limiter On / Pause.
4. Select speed limiter mode.
5. Deactivate the speed limiter.

### Displays in the instrument panel



The information related to the speed limiter is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

## Programming

- Press button 4 to select "LIMIT" speed limiter mode.

The selection is confirmed by the display of the "LIMIT" function in zone A of the instrument panel.



When the function is selected, the last memorised speed and the information "PAUSE" are displayed. With the engine running, you can adjust the memorised maximum speed, displayed in zone A, by pressing:

- Button 1 to increase the memorised maximum speed.
- Button 2 to decrease the memorised maximum speed.

Successive presses will modify the limit speed setting in steps of 1 mph (km/h) and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

## Activation



- Press button 3 when the desired maximum speed is displayed. The information "ON" then appears in zone A of the instrument panel.

## Pause / Resume



- Press button 3. This action causes the information "PAUSE" to appear in zone A of the instrument panel.



This action does not cancel the memorised maximum speed which remains displayed in zone A of the instrument panel.

## Exceeding the programmed speed



The accelerator pedal has a stiff point at the end of its travel. To exceed the maximum speed setting at any time, you can press the pedal all the way down. While the speed is being exceeded, the speed displayed in zone **A** will flash. Simply release the accelerator pedal to return below the maximum speed and restore the limiter function.

The speed will also flash if the speed limiter is not able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed setting (e.g. on a steep descent or under excessive acceleration).

To reactivate the speed limiter, release the accelerator to slow to a speed lower than the programmed speed.

## Return to normal driving



- ☞ Press button 5.
- ☞ Or select the speed limiter function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

## Operating fault

If there is a fault, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** In the event of a steep descent or under excessive acceleration, the speed limiter (which does not act on the brakes) may not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. Use of a floor mat other than that recommended by CITROËN may affect the normal operation of the accelerator pedal and hamper the operation of the speed limiter. Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

## Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal. The cruise control is switched on manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (40 km/h) and you must be in at least:

- 4th gear for a manual gearbox,
- 2nd gear for an automatic gearbox.



The driver must remain attentive and in complete control of the vehicle. You are recommended to keep your feet within range of the pedals.

### Steering mounted controls



The cruise control switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

1. Activate the cruise control at the current speed of the vehicle, then increase the programmed speed.
2. Activate the cruise control at the current speed of the vehicle, then decrease the programmed speed.
3. Pause / Restore the cruise control.
4. Select cruise control mode.
5. Deactivate the cruise control.

### Displays in the instrument panel



The information related to the cruise control is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

4

## Programming

- ☞ Press button **4** to select "**CRUISE**" cruise control mode.



The selection is confirmed by the display of the "**CRUISE**" function in zone **A** of the instrument panel. When the function is selected, **no cruising speed has yet been memorised**.

Once the desired speed has been reached using the accelerator, press button **1** or **2**. The cruising speed is then memorised and cruise control is activated. The cruising speed is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel, and "**ON**" is displayed.



You can then release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will automatically keep to the speed chosen. The vehicle speed may vary slightly from that memorised. If during cruise control the system cannot keep to the cruise speed (e.g. on a steep descent), then the speed flashes. If necessary, brake to curb your speed.

## Adjusting the memorised speed while the cruise control is in operation

You can adjust the memorised speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing:

- Button **1** to increase the speed.
- Button **2** to reduce the speed.

Successive presses will modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph (km/h) and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

## Exceeding the programmed speed

While cruise control is in operation, it is always possible to go above the programmed speed simply by pressing the accelerator pedal (for example to overtake another vehicle). The speed displayed in zone **A** flashes. You only have to release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.



## Pause / Resume



- ☞ Either by pressing the brake or clutch pedal.
- ☞ Or by pressing button **3**.
- ☞ Or by the DSC or ASR systems being active.

For vehicles with a manual gearbox, cruise control is deactivated if the gear lever is in neutral.



"**PAUSE**" will then be displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

These actions do not cancel the cruise speed setting which remains displayed in the instrument panel.

## Reactivation

- **By recalling the memorised speed**  
After deactivation, press button **3**. Your vehicle automatically returns to the memorised cruise speed setting. The memorised speed and "**ON**" are displayed in zone **A**.  
If the memorised cruise speed setting is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate strongly to reach the current speed.
- **By selecting the current speed**  
Press button **1** or **2** once the desired speed has been reached.  
The new speed and "**ON**" will appear in zone **A**.

## Return to normal driving

- ☞ Press button **5**.
- ☞ Or select the cruise control function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

The speed that was chosen is no longer memorised.

## Operating fault

If there is a fault, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Cruise control must only be used where the traffic conditions permit driving at a constant speed.  
Do not use it on congested roads or when the weather or the road conditions are poor.

## Lane departure warning system

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

**!** The lane departure warning system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. It is necessary to observe driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

### Activation

- When switching the ignition on or with the engine running, press this button; the indicator lamp comes on.

### Deactivation

- Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



### Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

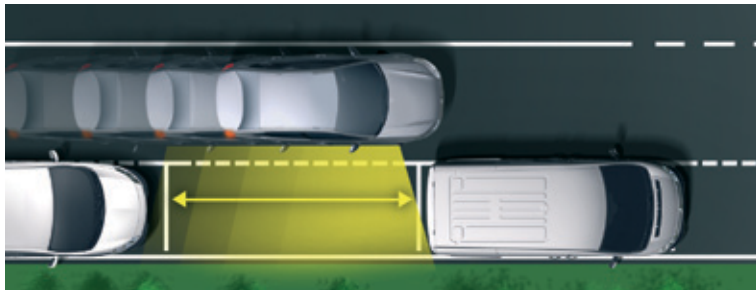
A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

### Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** The detection may be impeded:
- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
  - if the markings on the ground are worn,
  - if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

# Parking space sensors



System which measures the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles. It measures the size of the space and gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances necessary for your manoeuvres,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

## Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor system warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off**: the system is not selected,
- **on fixed**: the system is selected but the conditions for measuring are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measurement is terminated.
- **flashing**: measurement is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can select the "parking space sensor" system by pressing button **A**. The fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that the system is selected.

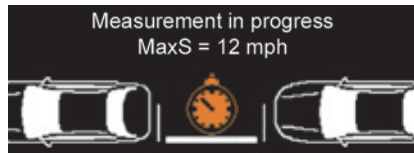
During the measurement, the message "Measurement in progress - Vmax 20 km/h (12 mph)" is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

## Operation

You have identified a parking space:

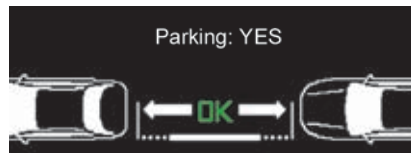
- ☞ Press button **A** to select the system.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During measurement, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approx. 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.

The system then measures the size of the space.

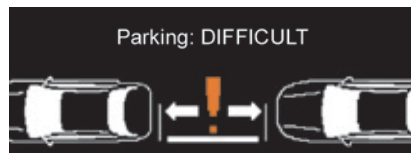


- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message in the instrument panel screen accompanied by an audible signal.
- ☞ Depending on the message issued by the system, you may or may not be able to perform the manoeuvre.

The system displays the following types of message:



**Parking YES**



**Parking DIFFICULT**



**Parking NO**

The system is deselected automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- if measurement is not requested,
- within five minutes of selection of the system,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approx. 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too large, the system may not be able to measure the space.

The system remains available after each measurement and thus can measure more than one space during your search.

In bad weather conditions or in winter, make sure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.

The parking space sensor system deactivates the front parking sensors during space measurement when you are in forward gear.

**i** If there is a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Parking sensors

This system detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located in front of or behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.

**!** The parking sensors system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

**i** In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. When the speed of the vehicle is below about 6 mph (10 km/h), some sources of noise (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, ...) may trigger the audible parking sensor signals.

## Operation

### At the front and/or at the rear

This system is comprised of proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.

The parking sensors are **switched on**:

- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the vehicle in the multifunction screen.

The parking sensors are **switched off**:

- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

### Visual and audible assistance



The proximity information is indicated by:

- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a diagram in the multifunction screen, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction screen version.

## Deactivation



### With the control on the dashboard

- Press control **A** to deactivate the system. This is confirmed by the illumination of the indicator lamp in the control.

**i** The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).



### With the touch screen tablet

- Press the **MENU** button.
- In the main menu, select the "**Driving**" menu.
- Go to the secondary page, then select "**Vehicle settings**".
- Uncheck the "**Parking sensors**" line to deactivate the system.
- Press on "**Confirm**" to save the modification and quit.

## Reactivation

### With the control on the dashboard

- Press control **A** again to reactivate the system.
- This is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the control going off.

### With the touch screen tablet

- Press the **MENU** button again.
- In the main menu, select the "**Driving**" menu.
- Go to the secondary page, then select "**Vehicle settings**".
- Check the "**Parking sensors**" line to reactivate the system.
- Press on "**Confirm**" to save the modification and quit.

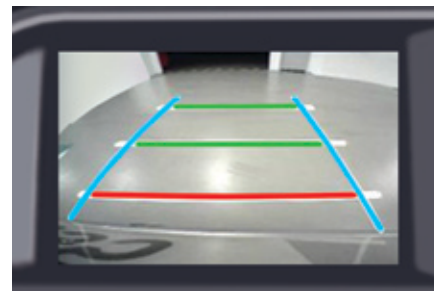
## Reversing camera (Tourer)



A reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. The image is displayed in the navigation screen.



The space between the blue lines represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.

The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

**!** This system is a driving aid that does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver, who must retain control of their vehicle at all times.

**i** Clean the reversing camera regularly using a sponge and a soft cloth. When cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, keep the lance at least 30 cm from the lens of the camera.

**i** The projected lines displayed in the screen do not allow the vehicle to be placed relative to tall obstacles (vehicles that are close for example). Deformation of the image is normal.

## "Hydractive III +" electronic suspension



The suspension automatically and instantly adjusts to different driving styles and to the profile of the road, providing the best compromise between occupant comfort and vehicle road holding.

The system alternates between soft and firm suspension settings, maximising comfort at the same time as constantly ensuring the highest level of safety. It also automatically corrects ride height, according to the vehicle load and driving conditions.

In addition, the "Hydractive III +" system allows you to choose between two modes of suspension.

A change of suspension mode can be made either when the vehicle is moving or when stationary, by pressing button **A**.

### Display in the instrument panel

The suspension mode selected is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

### Normal mode



This mode favours soft damping for maximum comfort. If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal road position.

### SPORT mode



This mode favours dynamic driving. The warning lamp on button **A** comes on in addition to the message in the instrument panel screen.

**SPORT** mode is retained when you switch off the engine.

### Vehicle positions



**Position changes may only be made when the engine is running.**

The adjustable ground clearance meets all types of situation. Apart from a few specific situations, the vehicle should be in the Normal position.

☞ Press once on one of the adjustment controls.

The change in position is indicated by a message on the instrument panel screen.

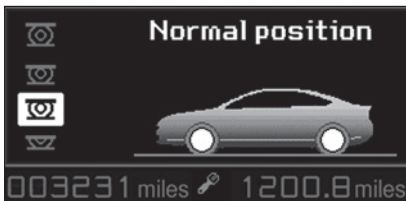






### High position

Changing a wheel (not possible if speed > 6 mph (10 km/h)).



### Normal position

If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal position.



### Mid-high position

For increased ground clearance (not possible if speed > 25 mph (40 km/h)).

For use on difficult roads when travelling at reduced speed, as well as on car park ramps.



### Low position

To facilitate loading or unloading the vehicle. For workshop inspections.

Not to be used in normal driving (not possible if speed > 6 mph (10 km/h)).

## Request not granted



The instrument panel screen temporarily displays a message indicating that this position is not authorised. The vehicle remains in the authorised position and the instrument panel screen indicates this position to you.

### Automatic variation of ground clearance

- If your speed exceeds 70 mph (approx. 110 km/h), on a good road surface, ground clearance is lowered. The vehicle returns to its normal position if the road surface deteriorates or if your speed is lower than 55 mph (approx. 90 km/h).
- At low or medium speed, if the road surface is poor, ground clearance is increased. The vehicle returns to its normal position as soon as conditions allow.
- On switching off the ignition, the ground clearance is reduced to the parking position.



**For your safety if you are operating underneath the vehicle, you must support the vehicle with axle stands.**

# Exterior lighting controls

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

## Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

## Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps, to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

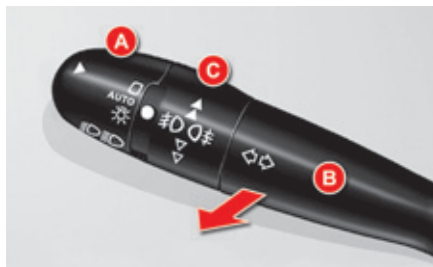
## Settings

You can configure some functions:

- daytime running lamps,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting,
- guide-me-home lighting.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

## Manual controls



The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

- A.** Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.



Lighting off (ignition off) /  
Daytime running lamps (engine running).



Automatic illumination of headlamps.



Sidelamps.



Dipped headlamps or main  
beam headlamps.

- B.** Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

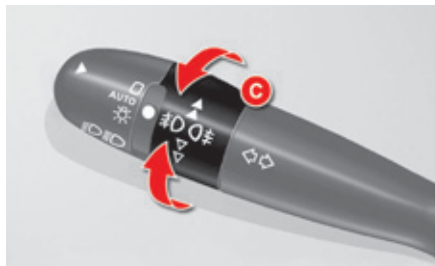
## Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

- C.** Foglamps selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the sidelamps and the dipped and main beam headlamps.

## Front and rear foglamps



- 1<sup>st</sup> turn forwards: front foglamps on.
- 2<sup>nd</sup> turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1<sup>st</sup> turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.
- 2<sup>nd</sup> turn rearwards: front foglamps off.

**i** In good or rainy weather, both day and night, use of the front and rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer needed.

### **i** Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

### **i** Switching on the lighting after switching off the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position "0" - lighting off, then to the position of your choice. When the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns you that the vehicle's lighting is on.

They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

## Daytime running lamps

These special lamps, located at the front, make the vehicle more visible by day.

They come on automatically and stay on, when the engine is running and when the lighting control stalk is at position **0** or **AUTO**.

## Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

## Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



### Activation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to the "AUTO" position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than "AUTO". Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

## Linked with the automatic Guide-me-home lighting

The link with the automatic illumination of headlamps provides the guide-me-home lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the duration of lighting for 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters menu,
- automatic activation of the guide-me-home lighting when automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

## Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on and a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.  
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer operate.

## Manual headlamp adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
- 1. 5 people.
- Intermediate setting.
- 2. 5 people + maximum authorised loads.
- Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

**i** Initial setting is position "0".

## Automatic adjustment of directional headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, depending on the load in the vehicle.

### SERVICE

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.



Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

5



### Travelling abroad

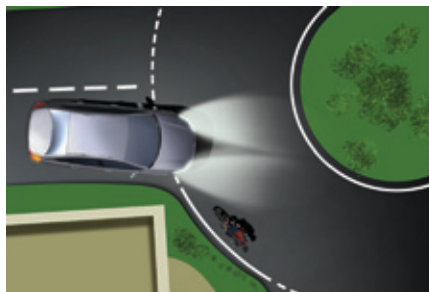
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, we recommend that you contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to check whether the headlamps need to be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.

## Directional lighting

### "Cornering lighting" function

With dipped or main beams, this function provides additional lighting for the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approx 40 km/h).

This lighting is most useful when travelling at low and medium speed (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres...).



without cornering lighting



with cornering lighting

### Activation

This function is activated:

- when the direction indicator is activated,
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

### Deactivation

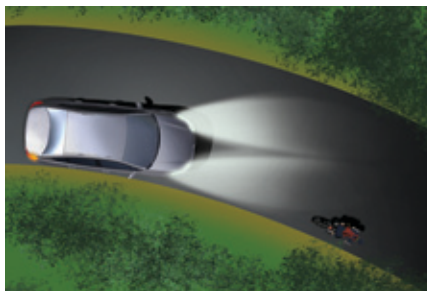
This function is deactivated:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- when stationary or at very low speed,
- when reverse gear is engaged,
- when the directional headlamps are switched off.



## "Directional headlamps" function

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, associated with the "Cornering lighting" function, enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road. The use of this function, linked with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

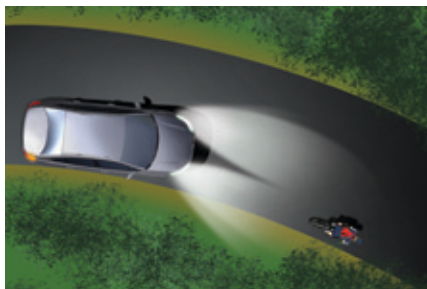


without directional lighting

## Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle parameters menu. This function is activated by default.

**i** The state of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off. When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.



with directional lighting

## Operating fault



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the display screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Wiper controls

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the weather conditions.

### Programming

You can modify the settings for the following functions:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

### Manual controls



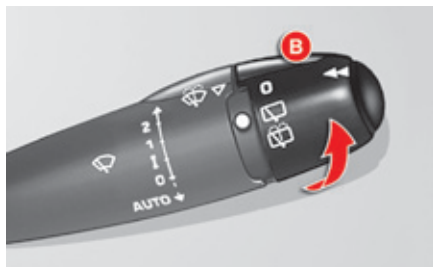
### Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>2</b>      | Fast (heavy rain).                                       |
| <b>1</b>      | Normal (moderate rain).                                  |
| <b>I</b>      | Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle). |
| <b>0</b>      | Off.   |
| <b>AUTO ↓</b> | Automatic, then single wipe.                             |

Refer to the corresponding section.

## Rear wiper (Tourer)



**i** If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle parameters menu.

**B.** rear wiper selection ring:



park,



intermittent wipe,



wash-wipe (set duration).

## Reverse gear


When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper operates if the windscreen wipers are operating.

## Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle parameters menu.

This function is activated by default.

## Windscreen and headlamp wash

 Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, with the vehicle moving.**

To reduce the consumption of the fluid by the headlamp washers, they operate only with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

5

## Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



### Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** to the "**AUTO**" position. It is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

### Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** upwards and returning it to position "**0**".

It is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

**i** The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing stalk **A** downwards.

### Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror. Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

## Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
  - clean them regularly using soapy water,
  - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
  - replace them at the first signs of wear.

## General safety recommendations

**!** Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

**!** For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

### **!** We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

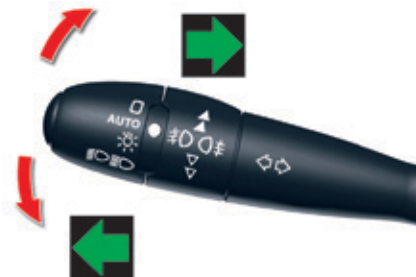
### **!** Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

**!** Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle. The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

## Direction indicators

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

### Three flashes of the direction indicators

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

## Hazard warning lamps

Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.
- They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic operation

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## Horn

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press the left or right-hand part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

## Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

**i** For more information on **Audio and telematics** and in particular the use of this equipment, refer to the corresponding section.



# Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

## Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

### Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

**!** When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, it indicates a fault with the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, it indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

**You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**  
In both cases, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

### Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.



When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

6

# Trajectory control systems

## Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

### Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Your vehicle has a system to improve traction on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of low adhesion that might make moving off and progress difficult on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations the **intelligent traction control** system regulates the amount of wheel slip to optimise the traction and trajectory control of your vehicle.

For vehicles with Hydractive III + suspension, manual adjustment of ground clearance to the intermediate position improves further the ability to make progress in deep snow (see the relevant paragraph).

### Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

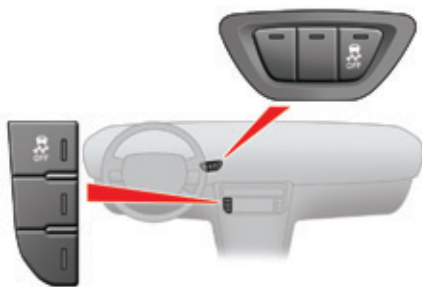


This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

**i** The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces with low adhesion.

## Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC and ASR, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.



Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.



☞ Press this button.



The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The DSC and ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine and on the brakes in the event of a involuntary change of trajectory.

## Reactivation

The systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually:



☞ Press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.



## Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp and the lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicate a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.


## **DSC/ASR**

The DSC and ASR systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep the DSC and ASR systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of the DSC and ASR systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral handling on the road.

 After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Seat belts

## Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact. Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
  - ☞ Press the fastening into its buckle.
  - ☞ Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
  - ☞ The lap strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
  - ☞ The diagonal strap should be positioned across the chest and away from the neck.
- Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.



### Height adjustment

When correctly adjusted, the seat belt shoulder strap falls over the middle of the shoulder.

- ☞ To adjust the belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

### Unfastening

- ☞ To unfasten the belt, press on the red button in the buckle.
- The belt retracts automatically when not in use.

## Rear seat belts



Each rear seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter.

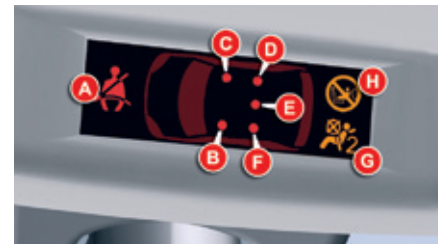
### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.

## Seat belts and passenger's front airbag warning lamp display screen



This display screen is located in the roof console.

The seat belt fastened/unfastened status for each seating position is indicated by the lighting or flashing of the warning lamps linked to each position.

- A.** Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
- B.** Front left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- C.** Front right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- D.** Rear right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- E.** Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
- F.** Rear left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- G.** Front passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp.
- H.** Passenger's front airbag activation warning lamp.

## ! Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfill their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide. Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

## Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

## In the event of an impact

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact**, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards best protecting the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards your protection in these situations.

### **! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the deployment of airbag will not be triggered again.



### Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

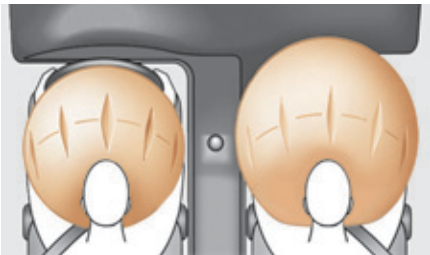
**i** Deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The noise of the detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.



## Front airbags

System which contributes towards the protection of the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, drivers side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.



### Deactivation

Only the front passenger's airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch **1**,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.



This warning lamp comes on in the screen located in the roof console when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.



To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

### Reactivation

When you remove a rearward facing child seat, turn switch **1** to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

## Operating fault



If this symbol appears **in the instrument panel screen**, accompanied by an audible warning and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



If this warning lamp flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.



If the symbol or warning lamp comes on continuously, do not install a child seat or an adult on the front passenger seat. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Lateral airbags\*

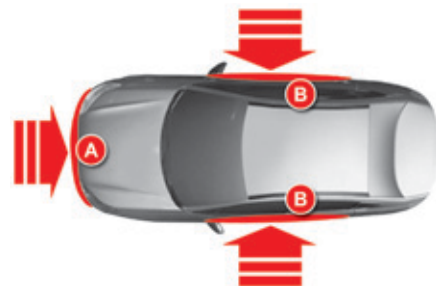
System which contributes towards the protection of the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front seat backrest frame, on the outer side.

## Deployment

It is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



## Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Curtain airbags\*

System which contributes towards the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is fitted in the pillars and the upper part of the passenger compartment.

### Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.



In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.

No lateral airbag is deployed in the event of a rear or front collision.

### Operating fault



If this symbol is displayed in **the instrument panel screen**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

## Knee airbag

The knee airbag improves protection for the driver's knees in the event of a serious front impact.

It is fitted in the dashboard below the steering column.

### Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the driver's front airbag.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## ! Advice

**For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:**

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment. Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

### Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

### Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings\*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

- i** **CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
  - **forward facing** over the age of 3.

\* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

# Child seat at the rear

## Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

## Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

## Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

**!** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.  
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

## Child seat in the front\*

### Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened. The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.**

### Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.



**Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.**

6

\* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.



Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned. For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

## Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

**!** Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



### Passenger airbag OFF

This label is located on the middle door pillar, passenger side.



- i** Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.
- ☞ With the ignition off, introduce the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
  - ☞ Turn it to the "OFF" position.
  - ☞ Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.

When the ignition is on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and stays on while the airbag is deactivated.



AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАПАДЕНИЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumistujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNYY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVE. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TESKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÜLYÖS SÉRÜLÉSET okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIKADA neįrengkite vaiko priekšinio priemonės su atgal atgrežtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVės. Įsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekli priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.

MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalix tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøretretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNA w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retenere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTELNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installerats på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

# Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

## Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



**L1**

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

## Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



**L5**

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

## Installing child seats secured using the seat belt

In conformity with European law, this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of universally approved child seats **(a)** using a seat belt, depending on the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

	Seat position(s)	Weight and indicative age of child			
		Up to 13 kg (Groups 0 <b>(b)</b> and 0+) Up to approx. 1 year	From 9 to 18 kg (Group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years	From 15 to 25 kg (Group 2) From approx. 3 to 6 years	From 22 to 36 kg (Group 3) From approx. 6 to 10 years
Row 1	Front passenger <b>(c)</b> with height adjustment <b>(e)</b>	U (R)	U (R)	U (R)	U (R)
	Front passenger <b>(c)</b> without height adjustment <b>(e)</b>	U	U	U	U
Row 2	Outer rear <b>(d)</b>	U	U	U	U
	Centre rear <b>(d) (f)</b>	U	U	U	U

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
  - (b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shells and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
  - (c) Consult the current legislation for your country before driving with your child in this seat.
  - (d) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.
  - (e) When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, the passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed**. When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, the passenger airbag must remain active.
  - (f) A child seat with a support leg must **never be installed on the centre rear seat**.
- U:** Seat position suitable for installation of universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing child seat.
- U (R):** As **U**, with the vehicle seat, which must be adjusted to the highest and intermediate longitudinal position.

**i** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## ! Advice

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible. You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

### Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

### Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

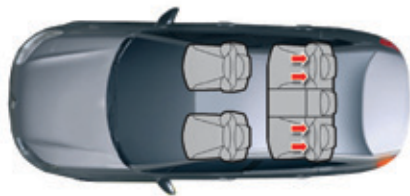
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

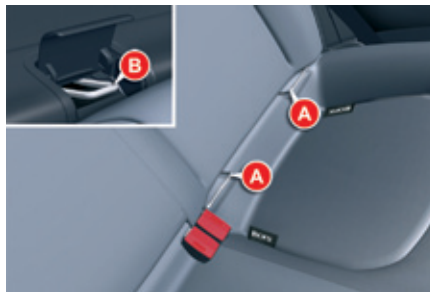
## "ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulations**.

The outer rear seats are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.



### Saloon



There are three rings for each outer rear seat:

- two lower rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,
- an upper ring **B**, called the **TOP TETHER**, fixed to the rear shelf and located under a cover behind the head restraint behind the head restraint, for fixing the upper strap.

It is indicated by a marking.

### Tourer



There are three rings for each outer rear seat:

- two lower rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,
- an upper ring **C**, called the **TOP TETHER**, fixed to the roof on the boot end and located under a cover, for fixing the upper strap.

It is indicated by a marking.

The TOP TETHER is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This arrangement limits the forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact.


This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.


The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on the two rings **A**, following installation of the guides (supplied with the seat).


Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to the ring **B** or **C**.

To attach the child seat to the TOP TETHER:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the strap of the child seat centrally between the head restraint rod apertures,
- raise the TOP TETHER cover, located on the rear shelf (Saloon) or the roof (Tourer),
- secure the upper strap fixing to the ring **B** or **C**,
- tighten the upper strap.



 The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

 Observe strictly the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

 For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.



# ISOFIX child seat recommended by CITROËN and type approved for your vehicle

RÖMER BabySafe Plus ISOFIX (size category E)	
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	
	<p>Installed in the rearward facing position using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings <b>A</b>. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, that must be in contact with the floor of the vehicle. This child seat can also be secured using a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and is attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point sea belt.</p>
RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category B1)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	<p>Installed in the forward facing position. Fitted with an upper strap to be secured to the upper ring <b>B</b> or <b>C</b>, referred to as the TOP TETHER. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying. This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.</p>



Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

## Positions for fitting ISOFIX child seats

In conformity with European law, this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of ISOFIX child seats to seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mounting points.

For ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats, the ISOFIX size class, defined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is shown on the child seat to the right of the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of child/Age given as a guide									
	Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to 13 kg (group 0+) Up to approx. 1 year			9 to 18 kg (group 1) Approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Shell		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size class	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats can be installed on the outer rear seats	IL-SU*		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		

**IUF:** Seat position suitable for installation of an Isofix **U**niversal **"F**orward facing" seat attached using the top tether.

**IL-SU:** Seat position suitable for installation of an ISOFIX **S**emi-**U**niversal child seat, either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a shell fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

To attach the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

**i** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

\* The ISOFIX shell, fixed to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

# Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.



## Activation

☞ Press button **A**.

The indicator lamp in button **A** comes on, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

## Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again.

The indicator lamp in button **A** goes off, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

This indicator lamp remains off until the child lock is activated.

**i** Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

# TOTAL & CITROËN

## Partners in performance and protecting the environment

### Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 years, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed lubricants for CITROËN, to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.

For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain the best performance from your engine.

### Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performance of your engine, while also protecting the environment.



CITROËN prefers **TOTAL**



# Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: approximately 71 litres\*.

## Low fuel level



- When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the display screen. When it first comes on, there remains around 5 litres of fuel in the tank.

You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.

## Opening the fuel flap



- Press at the top left corner, then pull on its edge.

## Refuelling



**While you are refuelling, the engine must be stopped and the ignition switched off.**

- Turn the key a quarter turn to lock and unlock the filler cap.
- When refuelling, place the cap on hook **A**.
- Fill the tank, but **do not persist after the third cut-off**; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

**For a petrol engine with a catalytic converter, the use of unleaded fuel is compulsory.**

The filler neck is narrower to ensure that only unleaded petrol nozzles can be put in.

- Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be taken into account by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise of an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is entirely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

- With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

7

\* 55 litres for Slovakia.

## **i** Travelling abroad

**Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.**

For any additional information, contact your dealer.

## **Fuel used for petrol engines**

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.



**i** The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

## **Fuel used for Diesel engines**

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use,

even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".



For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).



The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)\*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

### Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

### **i** Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**!** The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.






Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain specification
225/60 V16	Maximum link size: 9 mm
225/55 W17	
245/45 W18	These tyres cannot be fitted with chains
245/40 Y19	

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

### Advice on installation

-  If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
-  Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
-  Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
-  Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
-  Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.



## Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

### Switching to economy mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

**i** If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio system.

### Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

**!** A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.  
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Towing a trailer

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.



**i** We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

**!** Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care. For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** For more information on **Weights** (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

**!** You must observe the maximum trailer weight, indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical specification for your vehicle.

## When towing

### Distribution of loads

**☞** Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

**i** For more information on **Weights**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Side wind

**☞** Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

## Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

## Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

## Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

## Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Adjusting the headlamps**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

## Blanking cover



When towing, you must remove the blanking cover in the front bumper as well as the bonnet seal if fitted.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for this.

## Roof bars

The design of your vehicle requires the use of roof bars that are tested and approved by CITROËN, for your safety and to avoid damage to the roof and tailgate.

Regardless of the type of loading equipment to be transported on the roof (bicycle carrier, ski carrier...), it is imperative that you add transverse roof bars. Any securing or lashing to components other than the roof bars is strictly prohibited.

### Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute your load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and draw attention to it if any part of it is overhanging.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be altered).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

**!** Maximum load that can be distributed on the roof bars (for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm; except bicycle carrier): 80 kg.

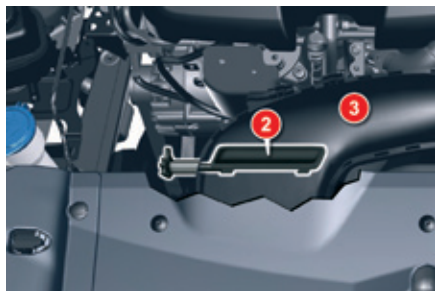
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt your speed to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

**i** Please refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations concerning the transportation of objects which are longer than the vehicle.

## Very cold climate protection\*

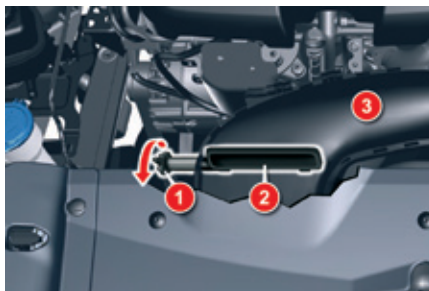
Adjustable device which prevents the intake of snow particles, which could obstruct the air filter.

### HDi 160 Diesel engine



#### Normal position

The flap 2 is in a horizontal position in the air duct 3.



#### Snow position

☞ Push and rotate the knob 1 by 90 ° in the direction of the arrow in order to position the flap 2 in a vertical position in the air duct 3.

To return to the normal position, push the knob 1 then rotate in the opposite direction.



It is essential to remove the very cold protection when:

- the exterior temperature exceeds 10 °C.
- driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Cold climate screen\*

Removable screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



**Before fitting**



**After fitting**

### Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the 2 sections of the snow guard to the upper and lower sections of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press on the surround to clip in one by one the fixing clips.

### Remove

- ☞ Using a screwdriver, lever each fixing clip in turn to disengage them.

- i** Don't forget to remove the very cold climate screen when:
- the exterior temperature exceeds 10 °C,
  - towing,
  - When driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).

\* Depending on the country of sale.

# Bonnet

## Opening

- !** Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



- ☞ Open the front left-hand door.
- ☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- ☞ At the front of the bonnet, lift the safety catch **B** and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing and pivot it to insert it in the notch **D** indicated by a yellow arrow.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

- !** When the engine is hot, handle the safety catch and bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

- !** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

- i** The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left-hand door is closed. This operation must only be carried out when the vehicle is stationary. Avoid opening the bonnet in strong winds.

## Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet then slam it firmly at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully closed.

- i** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

## Petrol engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking fluid levels and for replacing certain components.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir  
or  
or power steering and Hydractive III + suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Brake fluid reservoir.
7. Battery.
8. Air filter.



THP



# Diesel engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking fluid levels, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and Hydractive III + suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.



HDi 160



BlueHDi 150 / BlueHDi 180

- !** The Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:
- Never carry out any work on this system yourself.
  - HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

All maintenance and repairs require specially trained staff, which only a CITROËN dealer can provide.

## Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

### Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

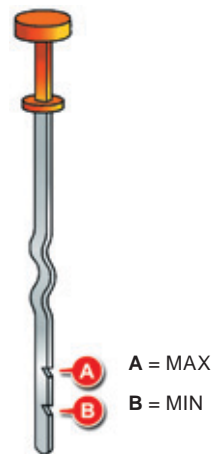
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top-up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top-up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

### Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top-up the engine oil.

## Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Topping-up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

## Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

**i** After topping-up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping-up.

## Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

## Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Power steering or power steering and suspension fluid level



For topping up, it is necessary to go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

**The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top-up the level.

## Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

## Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

Reservoir capacity (depending on version).

- screenwash fluid: approximately 3.5 litres,
- screenwash and headlamp wash fluid: approximately 6.15 litres.

## Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle filter)

### SERVICE

A low additive level is indicated by illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

## Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

## Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

## Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information and the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.



Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary.**

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

### Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

## Particle filter system (Diesel)

Complementary to the catalytic converter, this filter makes an active contribution to the preservation of air quality by trapping unburnt pollutant particles. Black exhaust fumes are thus no longer emitted.

After prolonged idling or driving at very low speeds, you may occasionally notice water vapour being emitted from the exhaust when accelerating. This is of no consequence to the running of the vehicle or to the environment.

- i** If there is risk of blockage, a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the service warning lamp. This alert tells you that the particle filter is approaching saturation (in conditions of urban driving of exceptionally long duration: low speeds, traffic jams etc.) To regenerate the filter, it is advised to drive as soon as possible, when traffic conditions permit, at a speed of 40 mph (around 60 km/h) or more for at least five minutes (until the alert message disappears).  
If this alert persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Manual parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.



Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.



## AdBlue® and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

### SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is held in a special tank with a capacity of about 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km). An alert is triggered automatically to warn you when the reserve level is reached: you can then drive about 1 500 miles (2 400 km) before the tank is empty.

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage of your vehicle between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), it will be necessary to top-up the AdBlue®.

**!** Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

## AdBlue® fluid range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

### In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

**!** The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

#### Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)

When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button displays the driving range temporarily.

Above 3 000 miles (5 000 km), the value is not specified.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)

AdBlue



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the fluid has been topped-up.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped-up. You can also top-up the tank yourself.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping-up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the fluid has been topped-up. Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped-up. You can also top-up the tank yourself. Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping-up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

**Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top-up emissions additive: Starting prevented". The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

**!** To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

## In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

**!** A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault". The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

**i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

### During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

## Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

**!** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i Freezing of the AdBlue®**  
 AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.  
 The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

## Topping-up the AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement. You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

### Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute AdBlue® with water.  
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.



**AdBlue®**

The supply in a non-drip container or bottle simplifies topping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles or 5 litre containers from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

## Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.



Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

## Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.



## Access

- ☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, raise the boot carpet then, depending on equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage box.



## Opening

- ☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap a 6<sup>th</sup> of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Lift off the cap.



## Filling

- ☞ Pour the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

**!** **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine, you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

- ☞ Wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

**!** If any fluid is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.  
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

## Closing

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6<sup>th</sup> of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.
- ☞ Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.
- ☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

**!** **Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue®,** signalled by the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented", you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle or introducing the key into the ignition switch.**  
Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.



Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.



# Running out of fuel (Diesel)

## Priming the fuel system



### HDi 160 engine

If you run out of fuel:

- ☞ after filling (minimum 5 litres) and removing the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump,
- ☞ operate the manual priming pump, until some resistance is felt,
- ☞ operate the starter motor while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait fifteen seconds before trying again.

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again and then try to start the engine.

When the engine is idling, accelerate slightly to complete the bleeding of the circuit.



HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

For any work on your vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the skills and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

### BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

## Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

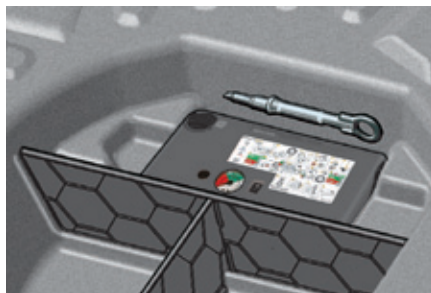
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.

You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

**i** It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder. Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

### Access to the kit

This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.



**All versions\*, except BlueHDi Diesel**



**BlueHDi Diesel versions**



### List of tools

These tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. 12 V compressor.  
To temporarily repair a tyre using an integral sealant cartridge and adjust the tyre pressure.
2. Towing eye.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Description of the kit



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
- B. On "I" / off "O" switch.
- C. Deflation button.
- D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).



- E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12 V socket.
- F. Sealant cartridge.
- G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.
- H. Speed limit sticker.

**i** The speed limit sticker **H** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.  
Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Repair procedure



### 1. Sealing

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- ☞ Check that the switch **B** is in position "O".



- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

**i** Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

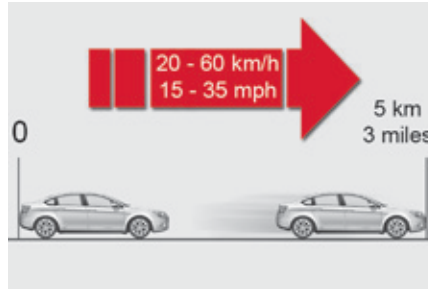
**!** Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

**i** Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

**i** If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.



- ☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.



## 2. Inflation

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the tyre valve.



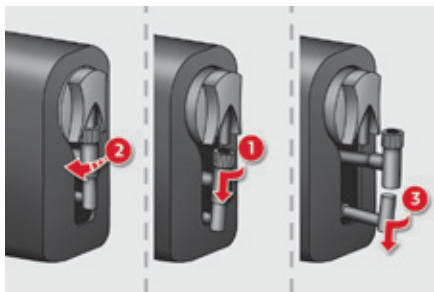
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

**!** As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

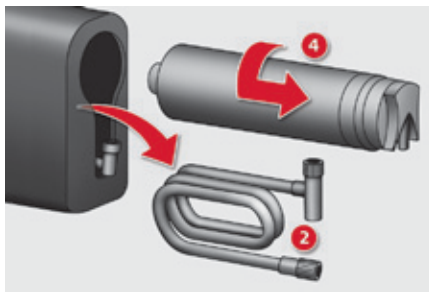


- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left-hand door aperture).  
A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- ☞ Remove and stow the kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

## Removing the pipe and cartridge



- ☞ Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it contacts the unit.
- ☞ Disconnect the union **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Extract the pipe assembly **2**, then disconnect the union **3** from the air delivery pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.



- ☞ Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
  - ☞ Support the compressor vertically.
  - ☞ Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.
- To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**!** Beware of discharges of fluid.  
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.  
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.  
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.  
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

## Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

You can also use the compressor without injecting any product, to check and if necessary adjust your tyre pressures.



- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the pipe to the tyre valve.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.



# Changing a wheel

## Access to the tools



For vehicles supplied with a **standard spare wheel** (same size as the four wheels), the tools are stowed in a carrier, located in the spare wheel.

☞ Release the retaining strap for access to it.



For vehicles supplied with a **"space-saver" type spare wheel**, the tools are stowed in a storage well, located below the spare wheel.

☞ Unscrew the central yellow screw and remove the wheel for access to it.



### List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.



Do not use:

- the jack for any purpose other than lifting the vehicle,
- a different jack from the one supplied with the vehicle.

If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one listed by the manufacturer.

1. Wheelbrace.  
Used for removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.  
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Bolt head finisher tool.  
Used to remove the wheel bolt protectors (finishers) on wheel bolts with alloy wheels.
4. Wheel chock\*.
5. Towing eye.



For more information on **Towing the vehicle**, refer to the corresponding section.

\* Depending on country of sale.

## Access to the spare wheel



### Removing the boot floor

- ☞ **Saloon:** raise the boot floor and fold in two.
- ☞ **Tourer:** raise the boot floor and hook it using the retractable handle. Secure the hook to the top part of the boot.

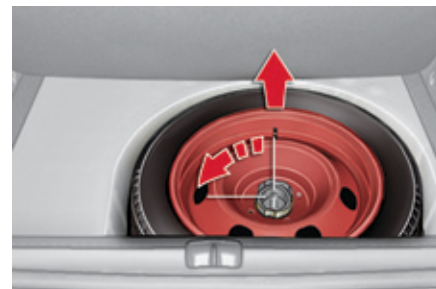


### Removing the standard spare wheel

- ☞ Detach the strap, then push the wheel forwards so as to be able to lift it.

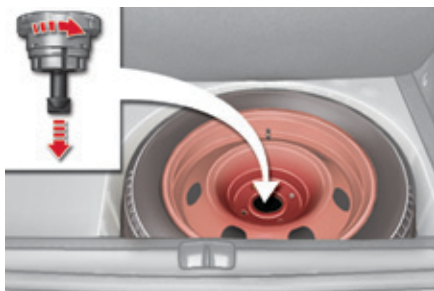
### Repositioning the standard spare wheel

- ☞ Position the spare wheel flat in the boot, then pull it towards you.
- ☞ Next place the toolbox inside the wheel, then secure the assembly using the strap.



### Removing the "space-saver" spare wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fixing parts (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Take the spare wheel from the rear and lift it towards you.
- ☞ Remove the wheel from the boot.



### Repositioning the "space-saver" spare wheel

- ☞ Return the spare wheel to its housing above the toolbox.
- ☞ Unscrew the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ☞ Place the fixing parts (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten the central nut until it clicks to secure the wheel.

### Repositioning the boot floor

- ☞ Release the boot floor to return it to its initial position.



- ! The tyre pressures are indicated on the label located on the left-hand centre door pillar.  
Tyre pressures are given on this label for different vehicle loading conditions.

## Removing a wheel



- ☞ Park the vehicle on stable, firm ground that is not slippery. Apply the parking brake.
- ☞ If your vehicle is equipped with "Hydractive III+" suspension, with the engine running at idle, adjust the ground clearance to its maximum height.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and engage first gear (position **P** for an automatic gearbox).
- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with "Hydractive III+" suspension, position the chock, whichever direction the gradient may be in, in front of the front wheel diametrically opposite to the one to be replaced.

### ! Before positioning the jack:

- ☞ Always adjust the vehicle's ground clearance to the "maximum height" position and retain this adjustment for as long as the jack is under the vehicle (do not use the hydraulic adjustments),
- ☞ Ensure that any passengers have left the vehicle and are in a safe place.

Never go underneath the vehicle if it is supported only by the jack.

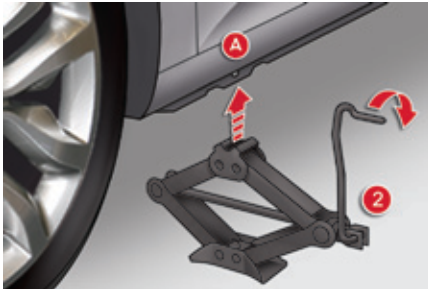
The jack and all of the tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for any other purposes.

Have the original wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible.

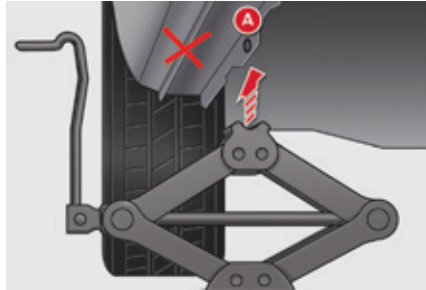


### List of operations

- ☞ Remove the protector from each bolt using tool 3.
- ☞ Fit the security bolt socket to the wheelbrace to slacken the security bolt (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using just the wheelbrace 1.



- ☞ Position the foot of the jack **2** on the ground, ensuring that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, closest to the wheel to be changed.



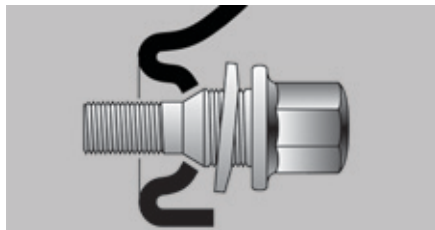
- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily fit the spare (non punctured) wheel.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and stow them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

**!** Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury! Ensure that the jack is positioned only at one of the jacking points provided under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact area is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

## Wheel for temporary use



Your vehicle may be fitted with a spare wheel which is different to those on the vehicle. When fitting the spare wheel, it is normal to notice that the wheel bolt washers do not come into contact with the wheel rim. The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolt contact surfaces are clean and in good condition.

## Fitting a wheel



### List of operations

- ☞ Fit the wheel on the hub.
- ☞ Fit and tighten the bolts by hand.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security bolt socket (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using just the wheelbrace 1.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle to the ground.
- ☞ Lower the jack 2 and remove it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security bolt socket (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using just the wheelbrace **1**.
- ☞ Refit the protectors on the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Stow the tools in the carrier box.
- ☞ Return the suspension to the normal position.
- ☞ Check that the tyre pressure is correct and have the balancing checked.



If your vehicle is fitted with a spare wheel of a different size to those on the vehicle, you must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) whilst using the spare wheel. The wheel bolts are specific to the type of wheel.

If the type of wheel is changed, check with your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels. Take care to note down the code number engraved on the head of the security bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain a replacement security bolt socket from your dealer.



### Tyre under-inflation detection

The space-saver type or steel spare wheel does not have a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
  - ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
  - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
  - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- ! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
  - ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp. Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

### Front lamps



#### Model with Xenon headlamps (D1S)

1. **Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main):** D1S
2. **Cornering lighting:** HP19
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps:** LEDs

For the maintenance of the front lamps and changing HP19 and D1S bulbs and LED lamps, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! **Risk of electrocution**  
Xenon bulbs must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
You are advised to change both D1S bulbs at the same time, if one of them has failed.





## Model with halogen headlamps

1. **Main beams:** H1
2. **Dipped beams:** H7
3. **Directional lighting:** H7
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps:** LEDs

For the maintenance of the front lamps and changing LED lamps, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Main beam headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cap **A**.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining spring.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it, paying attention to the direction of fitting.
- ☞ Refit the retaining spring.
- ☞ Refit the protective cap **A**.



## Dipped beam headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- ☞ Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- ☞ Take out the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- ☞ Refit the connector, until it is all the way in.
- ☞ Refit the protective cap **B**.



### Directional lamp

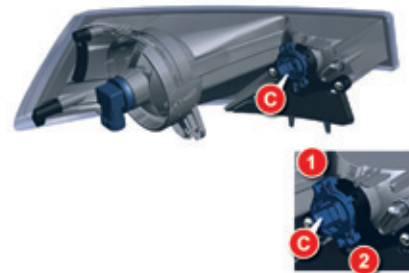
- 🔧 Remove the protective cap **C**.
- 🔧 Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- 🔧 Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- 🔧 Take out the bulb.
- 🔧 Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- 🔧 Refit the connector, until it is all the way in.
- 🔧 Refit the protective cap **C**.



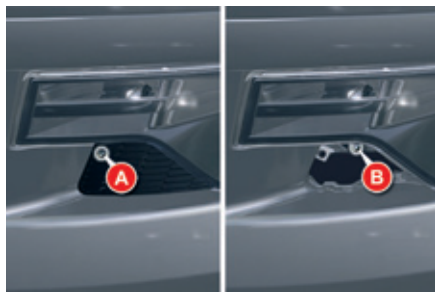
### Direction indicators

#### Bulbs: HP24

- 🔧 Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- 🔧 Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool, then pull the lamp to remove it from the bumper.
- 🔧 Detach the bulb **C** by pressing on bars **1** and **2**.
- 🔧 Disconnect the connector (pull whilst pressing on the grey tongue using a flat screwdriver).
- 🔧 Replace the bulb.



- 🔧 Refit the connector (push the grey tongue in well).
- 🔧 Refit the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- 🔧 Refit the lamp screws.
- 🔧 Position the cover using its guides and refit the screws.



## Front foglamps

### Bulbs: H8

- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool, then pull on the lamp to remove it from the bumper.



- ☞ Disconnect the connector **D**.
- ☞ Remove the bulb by performing a quarter of a turn.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Refit the connector **D**.
- ☞ Refit the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- ☞ Refit the lamp screws.
- ☞ Position the cover using its guides and refit the screws.



## Side repeaters

The side repeater is sealed.  
If the bulb is faulty, replace the side repeater.  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

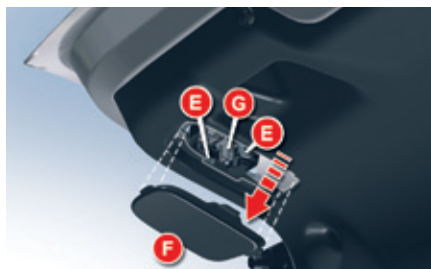
**i** When refitting, take care not to trap the electrical wiring.

## Rear lamps (Saloon)



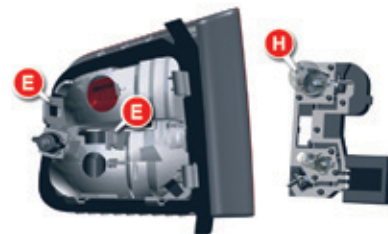
Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Brake lamps and sidelamps:** P21W/5W
2. **Sidelamps:** R5W
3. **Reversing lamps:** H21W
4. **Foglamps:** H21W
5. **Direction indicators:** PY21W

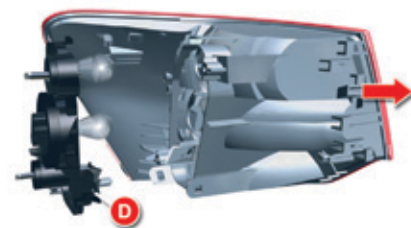


### Boot lid-mounted lamps

- 🔧 Open the boot.
- 🔧 Using a flat screwdriver, remove the 3 clips which fix the trim in the lamp area.
- 🔧 Partially remove the trim **F**.
- 🔧 Disconnect the connector **G**.
- 🔧 Unclip the bulb holder **H**.
- 🔧 Replace the failed bulb.



- 🔧 Refit the bulb holder **H**.
- 🔧 Check that the bulb holder **H** is secured correctly by the two clips **E**.
- 🔧 Refit the connector **G**.
- 🔧 Replace and fix the trim **F** with its 3 clips.



## Wing-mounted lamps

For vehicles fitted with a Hi-Fi amplifier, on the right-hand side slacken the screw by a quarter turn, then pull the boot side trim A up.

- ☞ Remove the lateral boot trim flap A. To do so, pull it towards the inside of the boot, then pull it upwards.
- ☞ Disconnect connector B.
- ☞ Unscrew the 2 fixings C.
- ☞ Remove the lamp from its housing.

- ☞ Detach the bulb holder D.
- ☞ Replace the failed bulb.
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder D.
- ☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Screw in the 2 fixings C.
- ☞ Refit connector B.
- ☞ Refit the side boot trim A.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixings C.

## Rear lamps (Tourer)



Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Brake lamps and sidelamps:** P21W/5W
2. **Sidelamps:** R5W
3. **Reversing lamps:** H21W
4. **Foglamps:** H21W
5. **Direction indicators:** PY21W



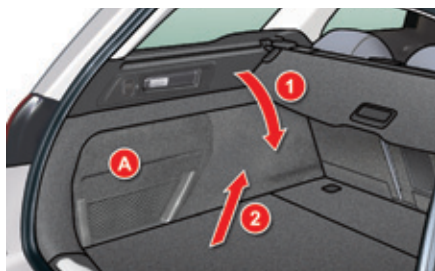
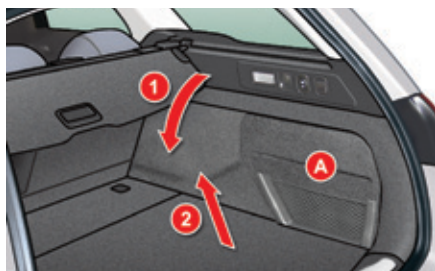
### Tailgate-mounted lamps

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Using a flat screwdriver, remove the plastic cover **E**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **F**.
- ☞ Unscrew the fixing nut **G**.
- ☞ Disengage the lamp from its housing.
- ☞ Unclip the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Replace the failed bulb.



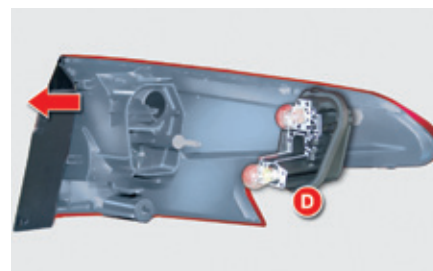
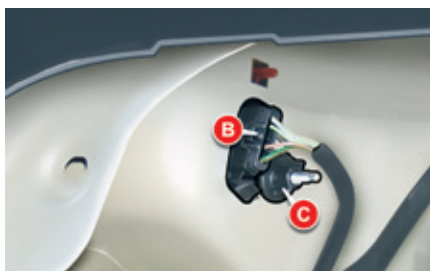
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder **H** ensuring that it is correctly clipped in place.
- ☞ Position the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Tighten the fixing nut **G**.
- ☞ Refit the connector **F**.
- ☞ Position and clip in place the plastic cover **E**.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixing nut **G**.



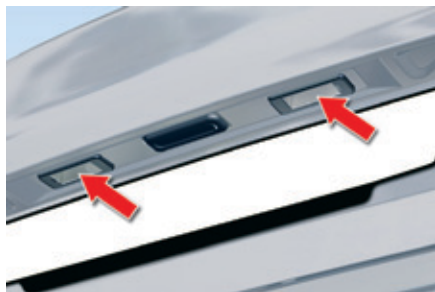
## Wing-mounted lamps

For vehicles fitted with a Hi-Fi amplifier, on the right-hand side slacken the screw by a quarter turn, then pull the boot side trim **A** up.



- ☞ Detach the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Screw in the fixing nut **C**.
- ☞ Refit the connector **B**.
- ☞ Refit the side boot trim **A**.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixing nut **C**.

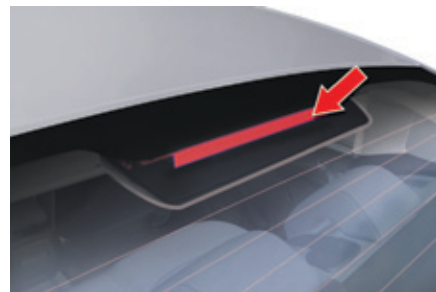


### Number plate lamps (W5W)

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the external holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.



- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.



### Third brake lamp (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Interior lamps



### Courtesy lamps

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Unclip the transparent cover of the roof lamp to reach the bulb.



### Rear reading lamps (Tourer)

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Detach the cover of the reading lamp to access the bulb.



### Boot lamp

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Detach the lamp cover for access to the bulb.

## Map reading lamps

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Detach the cover.
- ☞ If necessary, detach the partition of the affected map reading lamp.



### Door aperture lamps

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Detach the lamp cover for access to the bulb.



### Footwell lighting

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Detach the lamp cover for access to the bulb.



### Glove box

**Bulb:** W5W

- ☞ Detach the lamp cover for access to the bulb.

# Changing a fuse

The 2 fuseboxes are located below the dashboard and under the bonnet.

## Replacing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, you must:

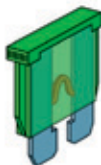
- ascertain the cause of the fault and have it remedied,
- switch off all electrical consumers,
- park the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- identify the failed fuse using the allocation tables and diagrams presented on the following pages.

When replacing a fuse, it is essential to:

- use the special tweezer, located on the cover close to the fusebox, to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- always replace a failed fuse with one of equivalent rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Good



Failed



Tweezer



The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction on your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Installation of electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



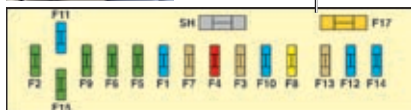
CITROËN will not accept any responsibility for the costs incurred in repairing your vehicle or for the malfunctions resulting from the installation of auxiliary accessories which were not supplied or recommended by CITROËN and which were not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular where the current consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamps.

## Fuses under the dashboard

### Access to the fuses

- ☞ Fully open the storage box then pull firmly on it horizontally,
- ☞ Remove the trim by pulling sharply on the bottom.

Fusebox A



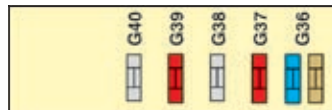
Fusebox C

When refitting the storage box, observe the following advice:

- with the storage box horizontal, refit the bottom ensuring that the lower cut-outs are in line with the pins,
- give a sharp push to the front,
- close the storage box, ensuring that the springs located behind pass over the top.



Tweezer



Fusebox B

## Fusebox A

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
G29	-	Not used
G30	5 A	Heated door mirrors
G31	5 A	Rain and sunshine sensor
G32	5 A	Seat belt not fastened warning lamps
G33	5 A	Electrochrome mirrors
G34	20 A	Sunroof (Saloon)
G35	5 A	Passenger door lighting - Passenger door mirror adjustment
G36	30 A	Electric tailgate (Tourer)
G37	20 A	Heated front seats
G38	30 A	Driver's electric seat
G39	30 A	Passenger's electric seat - Hi-Fi amplifier
G40	3 A	Trailer relay unit supply

## Fusebox B

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
G36	15 A	6-speed automatic gearbox
G37	10 A	Daytime running lamps - Diagnostic socket
G38	3 A	DSC/ASR
G39	10 A	Hydraulic suspension
G40	3 A	STOP switch

## Fusebox C

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
<b>F1</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Rear screen wipe (Tourer)
<b>F2</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Locking and deadlocking relay
<b>F3</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Airbags
<b>F4</b>	<b>10 A</b>	Automatic gearbox - Additional heater unit (Diesel) - Electrochrome rear view mirrors
<b>F5</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Front windows - Sun roof - Passenger door lighting - Passenger door mirror adjustment
<b>F6</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Rear windows
<b>F7</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Vanity mirror lighting - Glove box lighting - Interior lamps - Torch (Tourer)
<b>F8</b>	<b>20 A</b>	Audio system - Steering mounted controls - Screen - Under-inflation detection - Electric boot ECU
<b>F9</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Cigarette lighter - Front 12 V socket
<b>F10</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Alarm - Steering mounted controls, lighting, signalling and wiper stalks
<b>F11</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Low current anti-theft switch
<b>F12</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Driver's electric seat - Instrument panel - Seat belt not fastened warning lamps - Air conditioning controls
<b>F13</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Engine relay unit - Hydraulic suspension pump cut-off relay - Airbags ECU supply
<b>F14</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Rain and sunshine sensor - Parking sensors - Passenger's electric seat - Trailer relay unit - Hi-Fi amplifier ECU - Hands-free kit - Lane Departure Warning System
<b>F15</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Locking and deadlocking relay
<b>F17</b>	<b>40 A</b>	Heated rear screen - Heated door mirrors
<b>FSH</b>	<b>SHUNT</b>	PARK SHUNT

## Fuses under the bonnet



### Access to the fuses

- 🔧 Undo each screw by a quarter turn.
- 🔧 Remove the cover.
- 🔧 Change the fuse.

**!** After a repair, take care to close the cover correctly to ensure that it is sealed correctly.

Any repairs on the maxi-fuses (that give additional protection) located in the fuseboxes, must be left to a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F1	20 A	Engine control unit
F2	15 A	Horn
F3	10 A	Screen wash pump
F4	10 A	Headlamp wash pump
F5	15 A	Engine actuators
F6	10 A	Air flow meter - Directional headlamps - Diagnostic socket
F7	10 A	Automatic gearbox selector lever lock - Power steering
F8	25 A	Starter motor
F9	10 A	Clutch switch - STOP switch
F10	30 A	Engine actuators
F11	40 A	Air conditioning blower
F12	30 A	Wipers
F13	40 A	BSI supply (ignition positive)
F14	30 A	-
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam
F17	15 A	Right-hand dipped beam
F18	15 A	Left-hand dipped beam
F19	15 A	Engine actuators
F20	10 A	Engine actuators
F21	5 A	Engine actuators

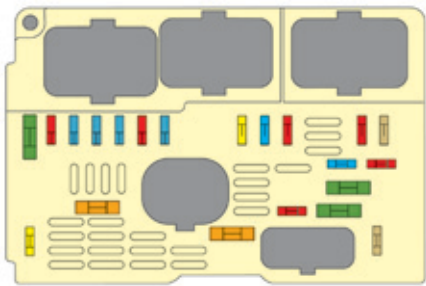


Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F6	25 A	Rear 12 V socket (max power: 100 W)
F7	15 A	Foglamps
F8	20 A	Additional burner (Diesel)
F9	30 A	Electric parking brake



# 12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

## General points

### Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.



If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

## Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay.

**(+)** Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

**(-)** Negative terminal.

As the battery negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located close to the battery.

## Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

**!** Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

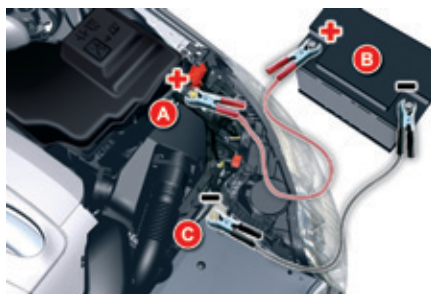
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).

Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- ☞ Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run. If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

**i** Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

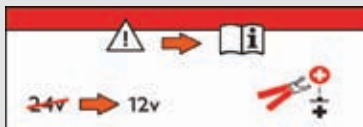
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

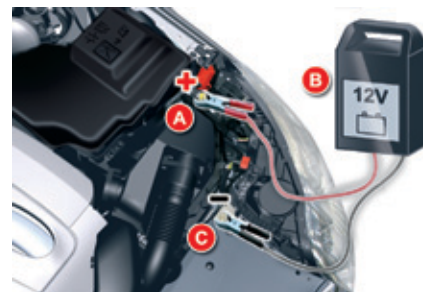


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

**!** Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).
- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



**!** Never try to charge a frozen battery. If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

## Disconnecting the battery

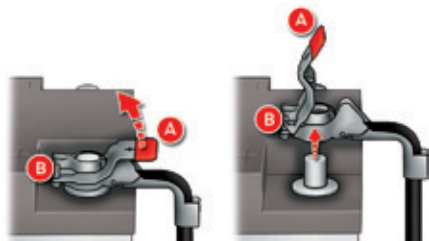
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

Having exposed the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

### Quick-release terminal clamp\*



#### Disconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.



#### Reconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

**!** Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

## Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine to allow initialisation of the electronic systems.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise or reset certain systems, such as:

- the remote control,
- the electric windows,
- the panoramic sunroof blind,
- the date and time in the audio system,
- the radio preset stations.

**i** The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the ambient temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

\* Depending on version.

# Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

## Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the jack box placed in the spare wheel.

For access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the jack box.

## ! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

## Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by levering at the bottom with the flat end of the towing eye.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Attach a towing arm.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.

- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** with an automatic gearbox).

**i** Failure to observe this advice could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

**!** In the event of a problem or malfunction with the automatic gearbox, the vehicle can be immobilised with a gear engaged. In this case, the front of the vehicle must be lifted for towing.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover:
  - by pressing at the bottom,
  - then by levering at the top using the flat end of the towing eye.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Attach a towing arm.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.

# Engines and gearboxes

Petrol engine	THP 160 THP 150
Gearbox	Automatic (6-speed)
Model code: RD... RW...	5FM-A 5FE-A/D**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8
EU standard maximum power (kW)* / hp DIN	120 / 110**
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	6 000
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	240
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	1 400
Fuel	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	4.25

**RD...: Saloon.**

**RW...: Tourer.**

\* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (directive 1999/99/EC).

\*\* In Russia, the maximum power is 110 kW and in Brazil, the maximum power is 120 kW.

## Weights and towed loads (in kg)

Petrol engine	THP 160 THP 150	
Gearbox	Automatic (6-speed)	
Model code	RD 5FM-A RD 5FE-A/D	RW 5FM-A RW 5FE-A/D
Body	Saloon	Tourer
Unladen weight	1 515	1 534
Kerb weight	1 590	1 609
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 026	2 200
Gross train weight (GTW)	2 526	2 700
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope	500	500
Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	710	790
Unbraked trailer	500	500
Recommended nose weight	69	74

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised speed is reduced when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.



# Engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	BlueHDi 150 S&S	BlueHDi 180 S&S
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code: RD... RW...	AHR-M/S	AHW-T/S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88	85 x 88
EU standard maximum power (kW)*	110	133
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	3 750
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	370	400
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes
Particle filter (FAP)	Yes	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	5.1	5.1

RD...: Saloon.

.../S: model fitted with Stop &amp; Start.

RW...: Tourer.

\* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (directive 1999/99/EC).

## Weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	BlueHDi 150 S&S		BlueHDi 180 S&S	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)		EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	
Model code	RD AHR-M/S	RW AHR-M/S	RD AHW-T/S	RW AHW-T/S
Body	Saloon	Tourer	Saloon	Tourer
Unladen weight	1 540	1 575	1 620	1 655
Kerb weight	1 615	1 650	1 695	1 730
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 160	2 235	2 190	2 290
Gross train weight (GTW)	3 660	3 635	3 290	3 290
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope	1 500	1 400	1 100	1 000
Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 750	1 650	1 350	1 250
Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
Recommended nose weight	73	67	57	51

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised speed is reduced when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

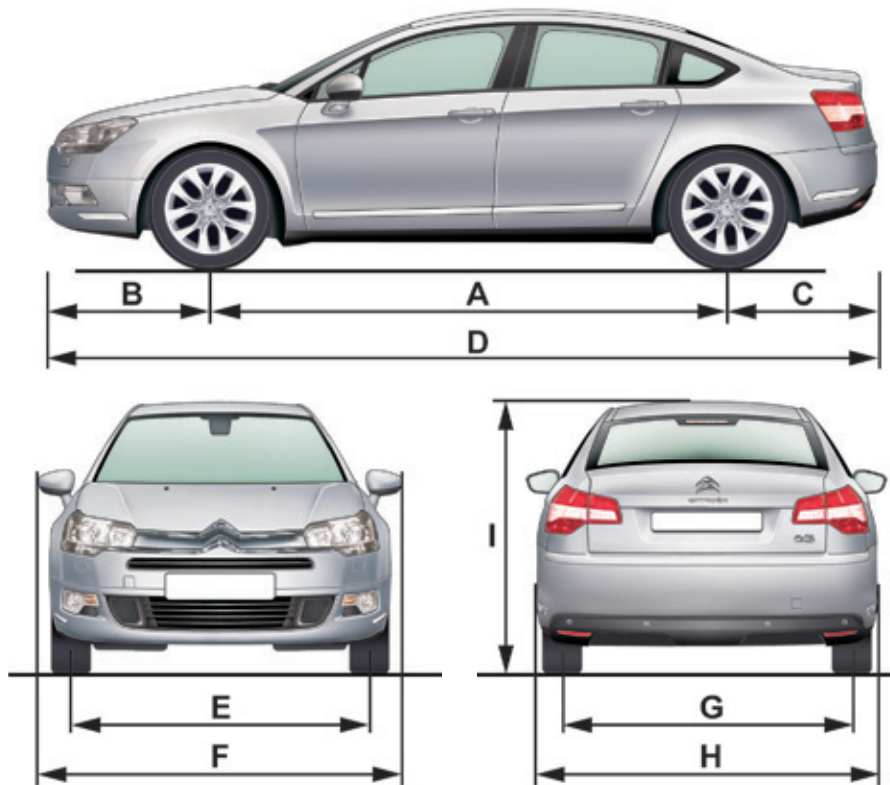
# Dimensions (in mm)

## Exterior (Saloon)

A	2 815
B	1 054
C	910
D	4 779
E	1 586
F	2 096
G	1 557
H	1 860
I*	1 451 1 458**

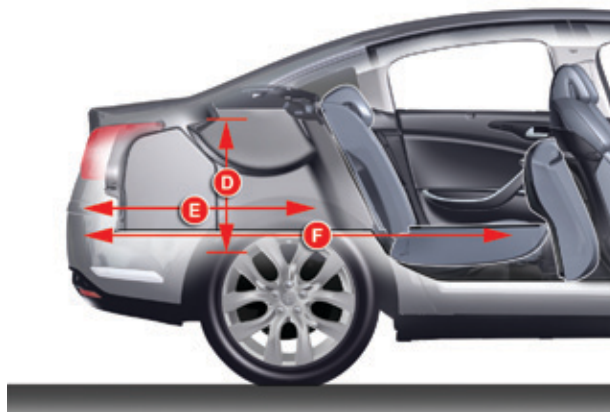
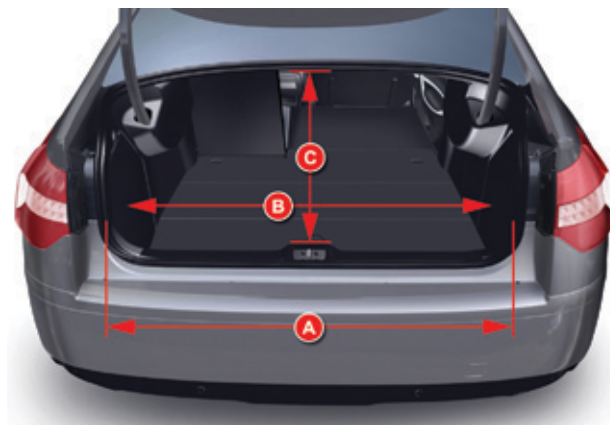
\* Without roof bars.

\*\* With metal spring suspension.



## Interior (Saloon)

A	1 030
B	1 115
C	566
D	504
E	1 040
F	1 705



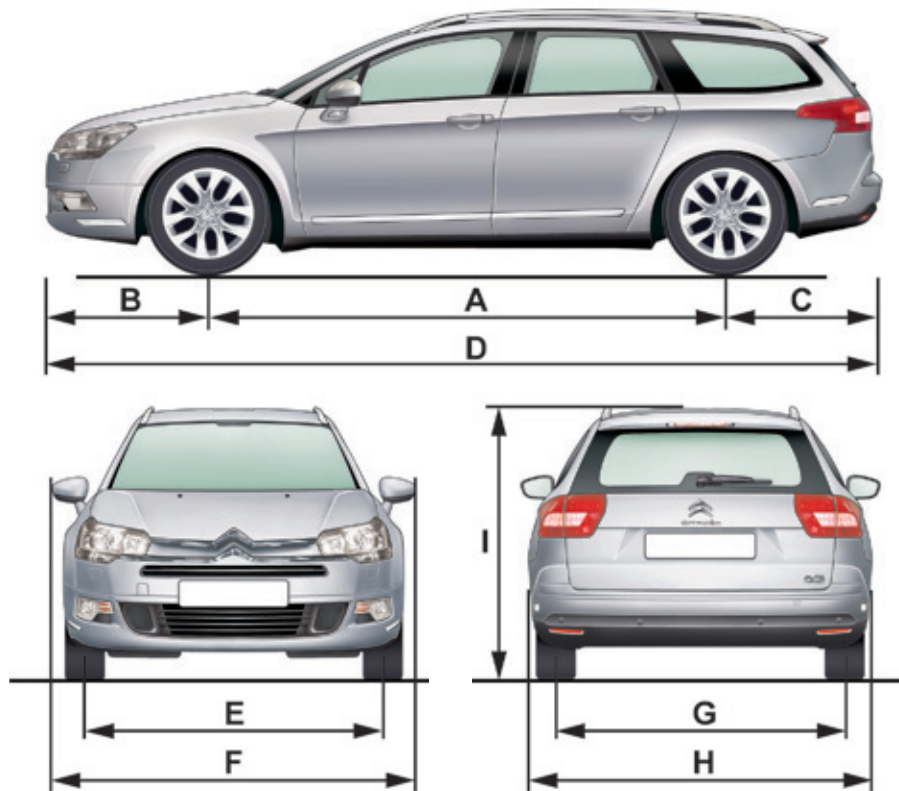
## Exterior (Tourer)

A	2 815
B	1 054 1 065***
C	959
D	4 829 4 840***
E	1 586
F	2 096
G	1 557
H	1 860
I*	1 479 1 483**

\* Without roof bars.

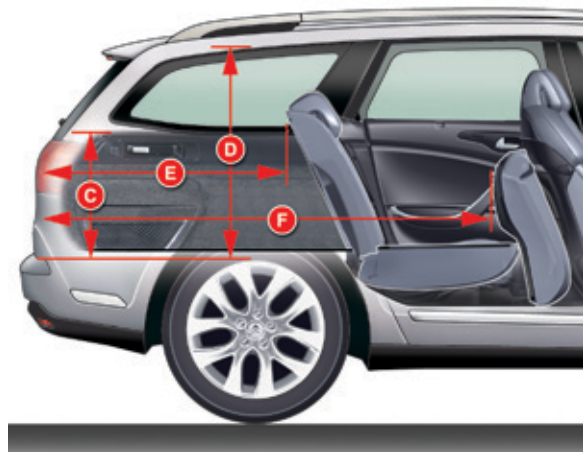
\*\* With metal spring suspension.

\*\*\* Tourer XTR version.



## Interior (Tourer)

A	1 060
B	1 115
C	510
D	851
E	1 058
F	1 723



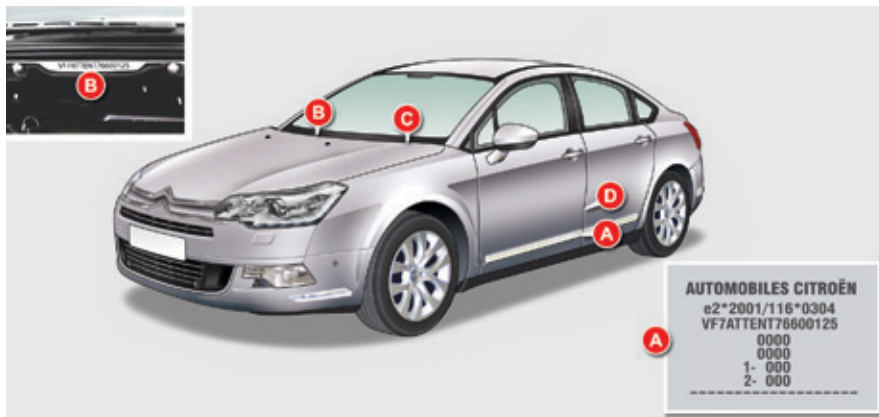
# Identification markings

Various visible markings for identification of the vehicle.

Refer also to the registration document for your vehicle for the vehicle type, serial number, weights...

All genuine CITROËN replacement parts are available exclusively within the dealer network.

For your safety and in order to remain within the terms of the warranty, you are advised to use only CITROËN replacement parts.



## A. Manufacturer's label

Affixed to the left-hand centre door pillar, it bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- EU type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).

- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on front axle.
- Maximum weight on rear axle.

## B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet

## C. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) at the bottom of the windscreen aperture

## D. Tyre / paint label

Affixed to the left-hand centre door pillar, it bears the following information:

- Tyre pressures, laden and unladen.
- Tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating).
- Tyre pressure for the spare wheel.
- Paint colour code.

**!** The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

**i** Observe the tyre pressures indicated by CITROËN.  
Check the tyre pressures at least monthly, when cold.

**☘** Low tyre pressures increase the fuel consumption of your vehicle.

# Emergency or assistance call



## Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"\* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.

The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language\*\* and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services\*\*. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

**!** If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

**i** If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

\* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

\*\* Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).



## Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.

In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

## Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

## Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

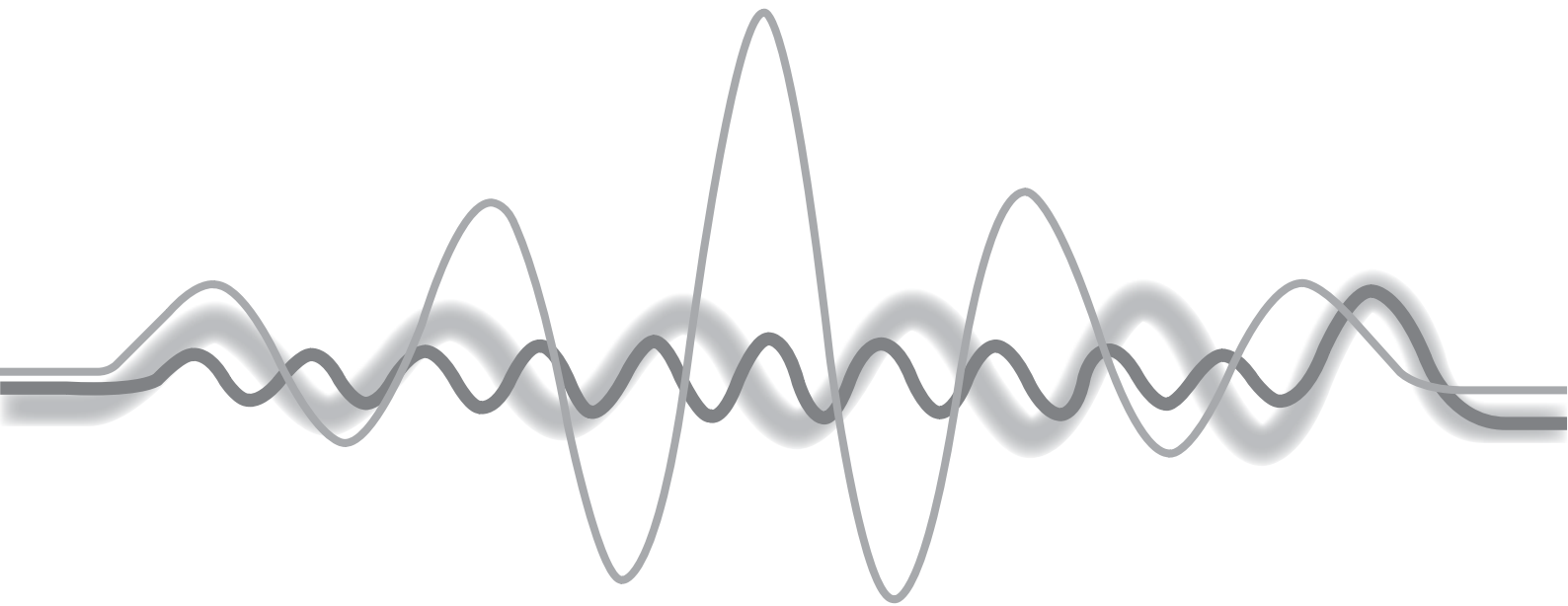
To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.  
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

\*\* Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).



# 7-inch touch screen tablet

## GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



	Contents
First steps	254
Steering mounted controls	256
Menus	257
Navigation	258
Navigation - Guidance	266
Traffic	270
Radio Media	272
Radio	278
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	280
Media	282
Settings	284
Connected services	292
MirrorLink™	292
CarPlay®	296
Telephone	298
Frequently asked questions	306

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby. Refer to the energy economy mode section.

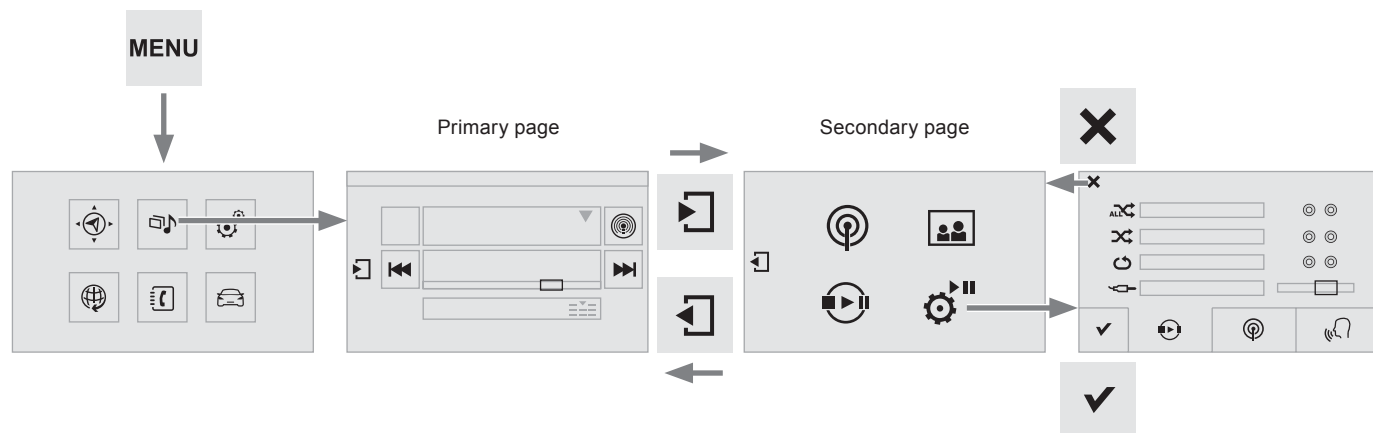
# First steps

Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen tablet for access to the menu carousel, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.

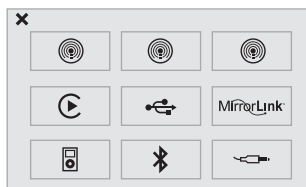
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



**i** In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

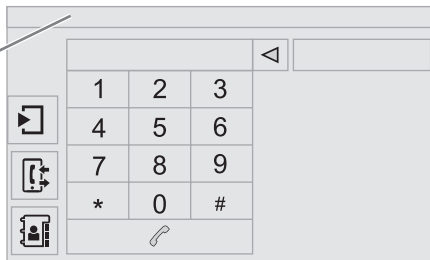


Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of the audio source or the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "DAB" / "AM" stations.
- "USB" memory stick.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth®\* and Bluetooth® audio streaming\*.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



### MENU

Press **Menu** to display the menu carousel.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

### VOL+

Increase volume.

### VOL-

Reduce volume.

Mute the sound by pressing simultaneously on the volume increase and reduce buttons.  
Unmute the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

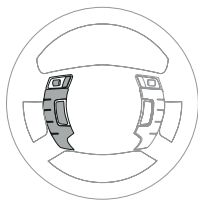
**i** In very high temperatures, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

**i** The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised. The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

**!** To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product. Do not use pointed objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

\* Depending on equipment.

# Steering mounted controls



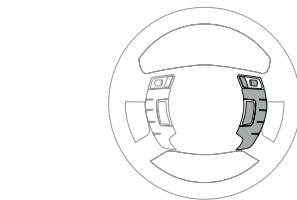
Activate/deactivate "Black Panel" mode - black screen (night driving).



Telephone: make a call.  
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (end call, secret mode, hands-free mode).  
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call; when there is no call in progress, access to the telephone menu.



Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.



Radio, rotate: select the previous / next preset station.  
Media, rotate: select the previous / next track.  
Press: return to navigation.



Abandon the current operation.  
Go up a level (menu or folder).

**MENU**

Display the menu carousel.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
Media: select the next track.  
Media, press and hold: fast forward.  
Jump in the list.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.  
Media: select the previous track.  
Media, press and hold: rewind.  
Jump in the list.

**LIST**

Radio: display the list of stations.  
Media: display the list of tracks.  
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.



Display the menu carousel.

# Menus



## Navigation

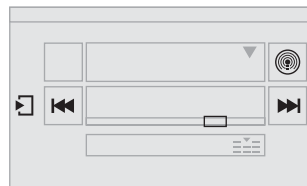
(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.



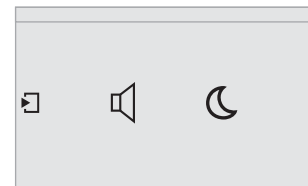
## Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



## Settings

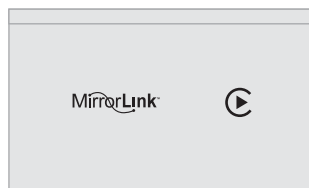


Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).



## Connected services

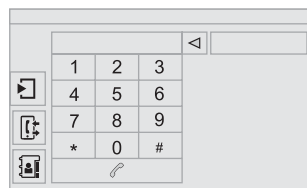
(Depending on equipment)



Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.



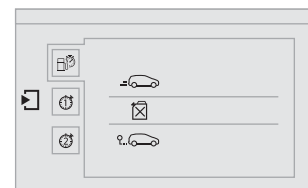
## Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

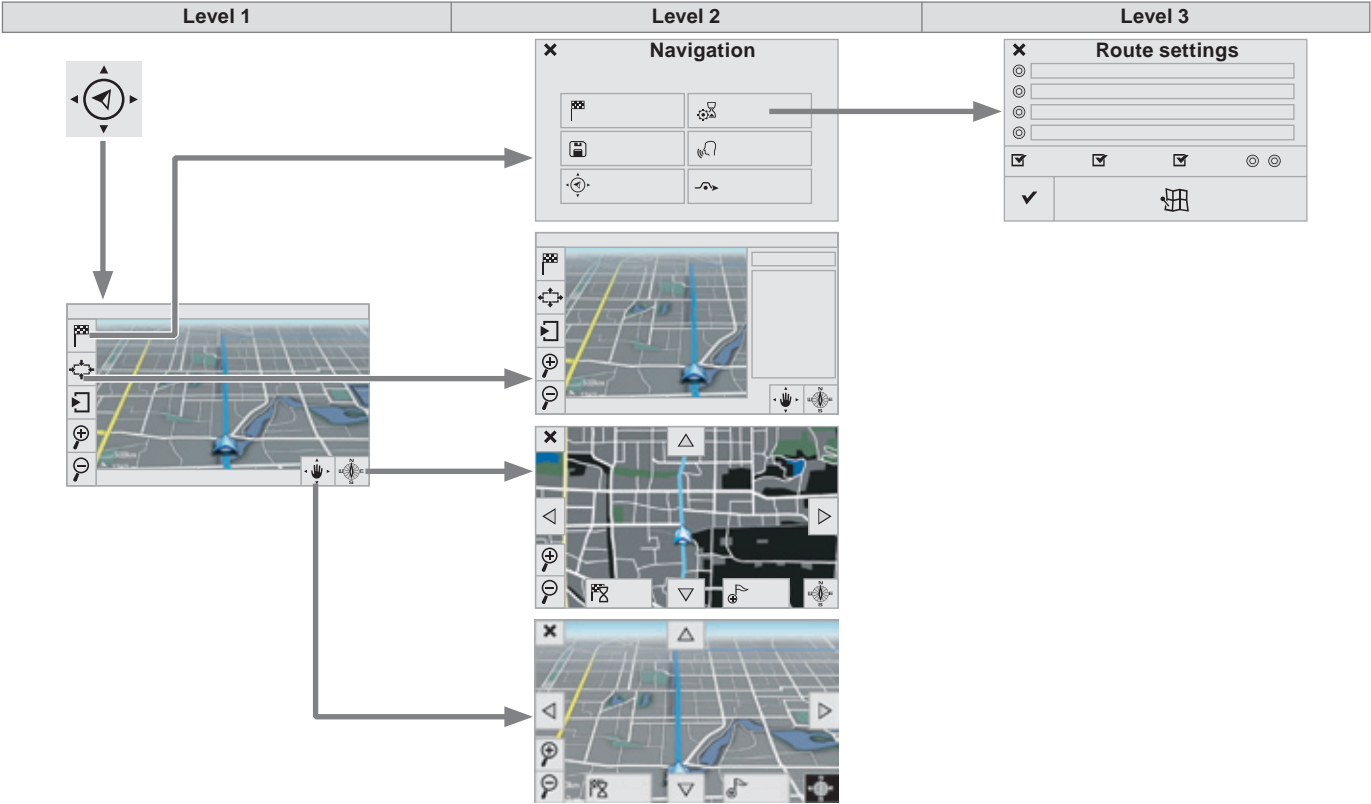


## Driving




























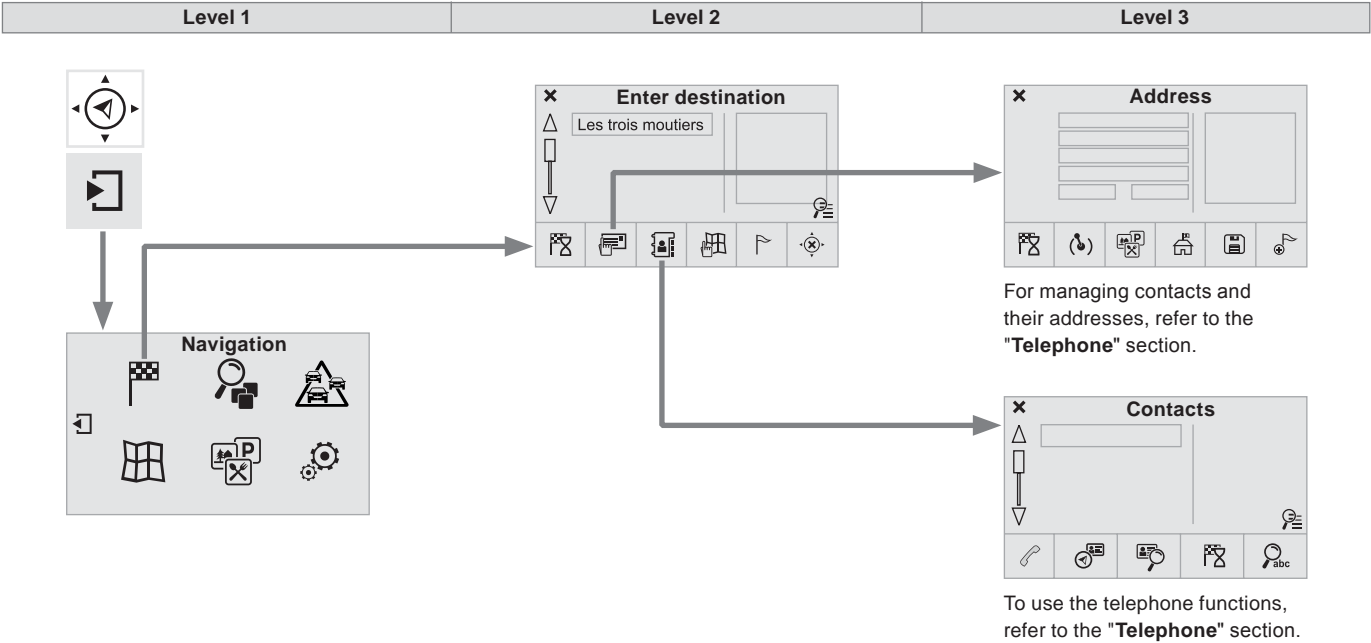
Access to the trip computer. Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.





















# Navigation



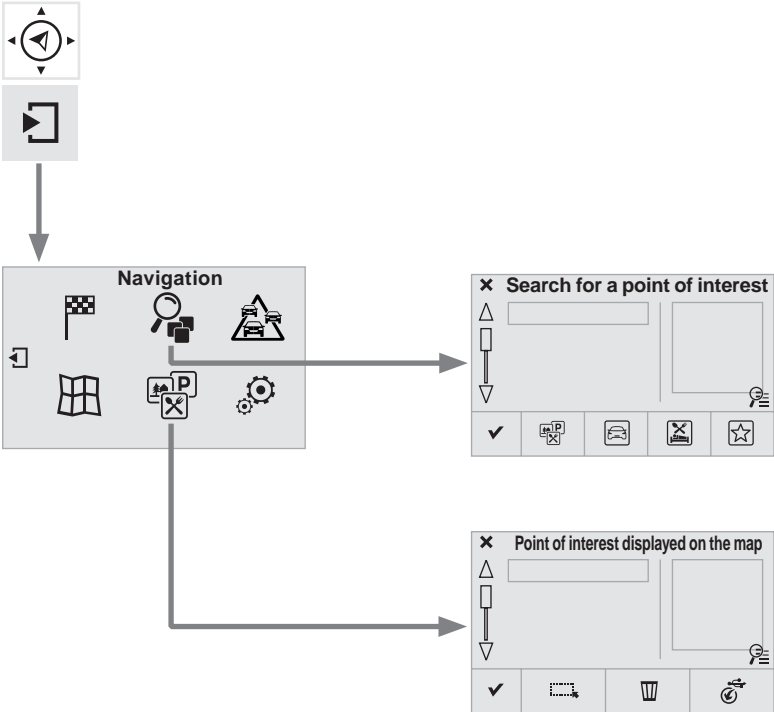















Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<b>Navigation</b> ↓ <b>Settings</b> <b>Navigation</b>		<b>Enter destination</b>			Display recent destinations
			<b>Route settings</b>		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					Confirm	Save the options.
	<b>Navigation</b>		<b>Save current location</b>			Save the current address.
			<b>Stop navigation</b>			Delete the navigation information.
			<b>Voice synthesis</b>			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			<b>Diversion</b>			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
						Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

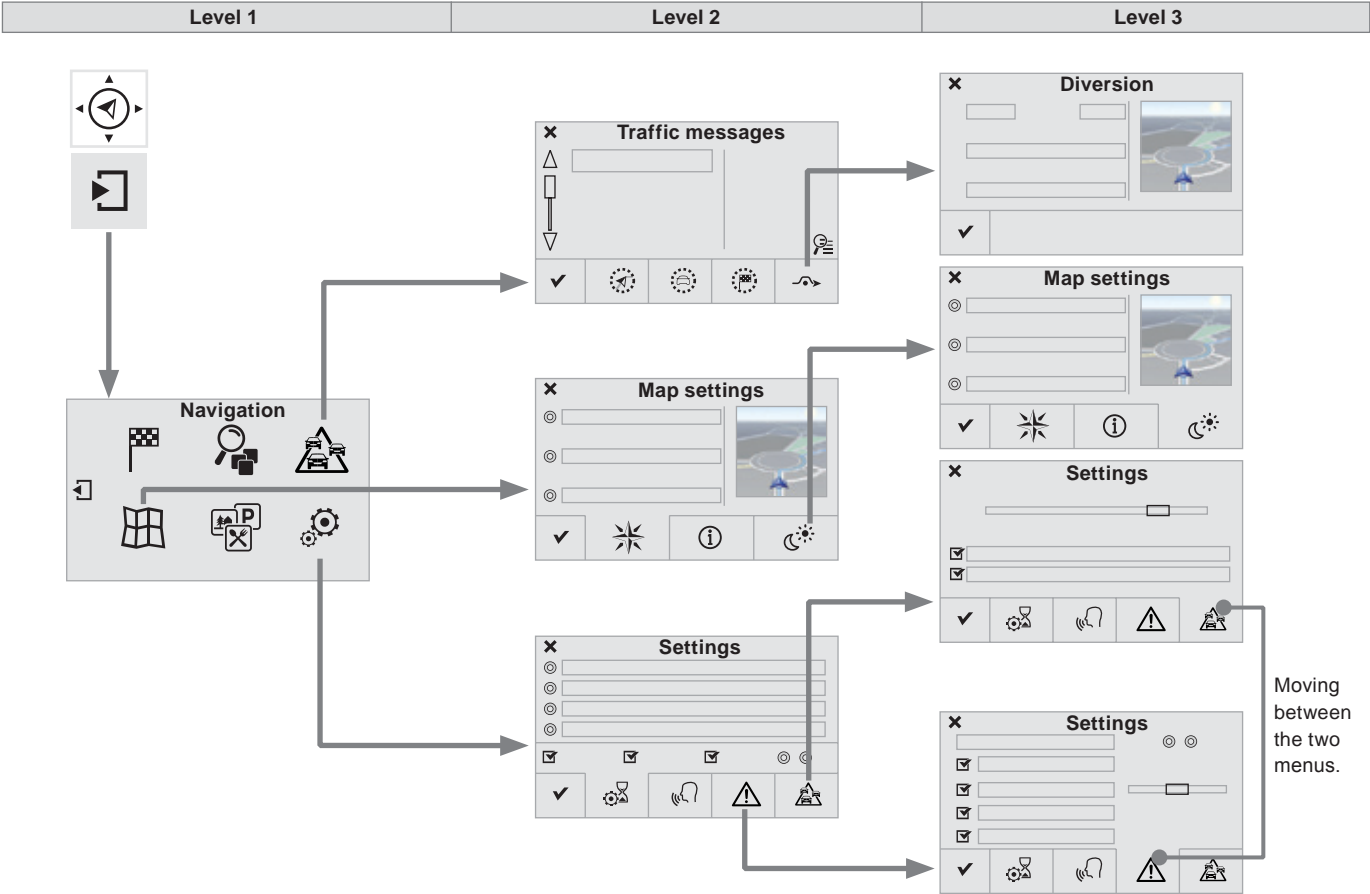

































Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	<b>Navigation</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Enter destination</b>		<b>Address</b>		Current loc.	Address settings
					Point of interest	
					Town center	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			<b>Contacts</b>		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			<b>On the map</b>			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			<b>Itinerary</b>			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			<b>Stop</b>			Delete navigation information.
			<b>Navigate to</b>			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
---------	---------	---------



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	Navigation		All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
	↓		Motor		
	Secondary page		Dining/hotels		
	↓		Personal		
	Search for POI	✓	Search		Save the settings.
  	Navigation		Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.
	↓		Delete		
	Secondary page		Import POIs		
	↓	✓	Confirm		Save the options.
	Show POIs				



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Traffic messages		On the route			Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
		Around vehicle				
		Near destination				
		Detour		Detour over a distance		
				Recalculate route		
		Finish			Save your selections.	
  	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Map settings		Orientation		Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
					Flat view vehicle heading	
					Perspective view	
			Maps			
			Aspect		"Day" map colour	
					"Night" map colour	
					Auomatic day/night	
			Confirm			Save the settings.
  	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Settings		Route settings			Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
			Voice			
			Alarm!			
			Traffic options			
			Confirm			Save your selections.

# Navigation - Guidance

## Choosing a new destination

### Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select **"Enter destination"**.



Select **"Address"**.

▼	FRANCE	⌵
▼	PARIS	⌵
▼	Blvd Hossein	⌵
N°120		

Select the **"Country:"** from the list offered, then in the same way the **"City:"** or its post code, the **"Road:"**, the **"N°:"**.  
Confirm each time.



Select **"Save"** to save the address entered as a contact entry. The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select **"Navigate to"**.



Choose the navigation criteria: **"Fastest"** or **"Shortest"** or **"Time/distance"** or **"Ecological"**.



Choose the restriction criteria: **"Tolls"**, **"Ferries"**, **"Traffic"**, **"Strict"**, **"Close"**.



Select **"Confirm"**.

Or



Press on **"Show route on map"** to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on **"Settings"**.



Press on **"Stop navigation"**.



To resume navigation press on **"Settings"**.



Press on **"Resume guidance"**.



## Towards a recent destination



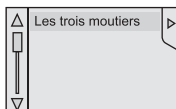
Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

## Towards a contact



To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



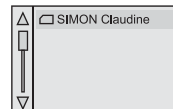
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

## Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



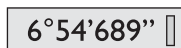
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude**:" then the "**Latitude**:".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

## Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

## Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**",

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

**i** An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.  
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.  
The detailed procedure is available on:  
<http://citroen.navigation.com>.

## Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

**!** This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

## Traffic

### Traffic information

#### Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",

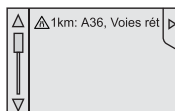


"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.



Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

**i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

## Setting filters



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Traffic options**".



Select:

- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.



Select "**Confirm**".



We recommend a filter radius of:

- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

## Receiving TA messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Voice**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

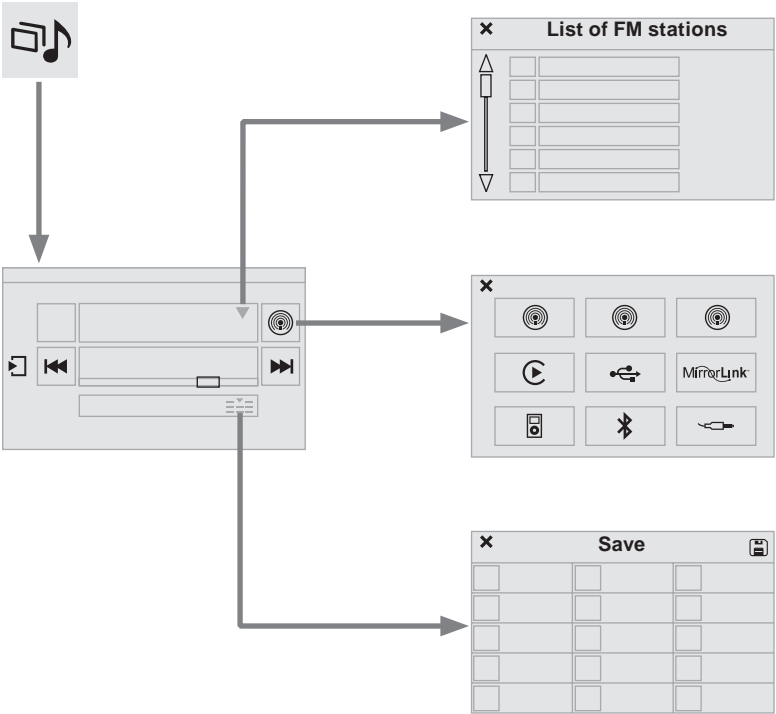



















The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

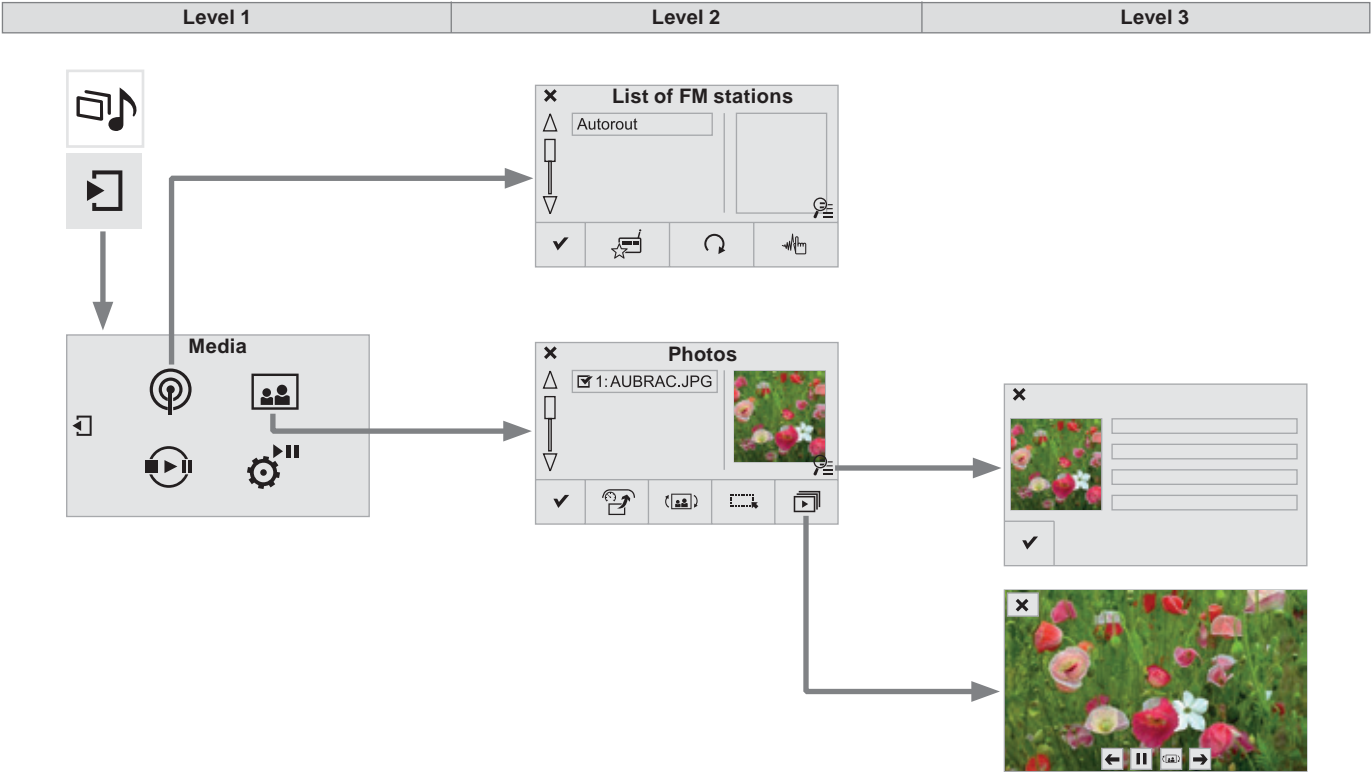
# Radio Media

Level 1



















Level 2

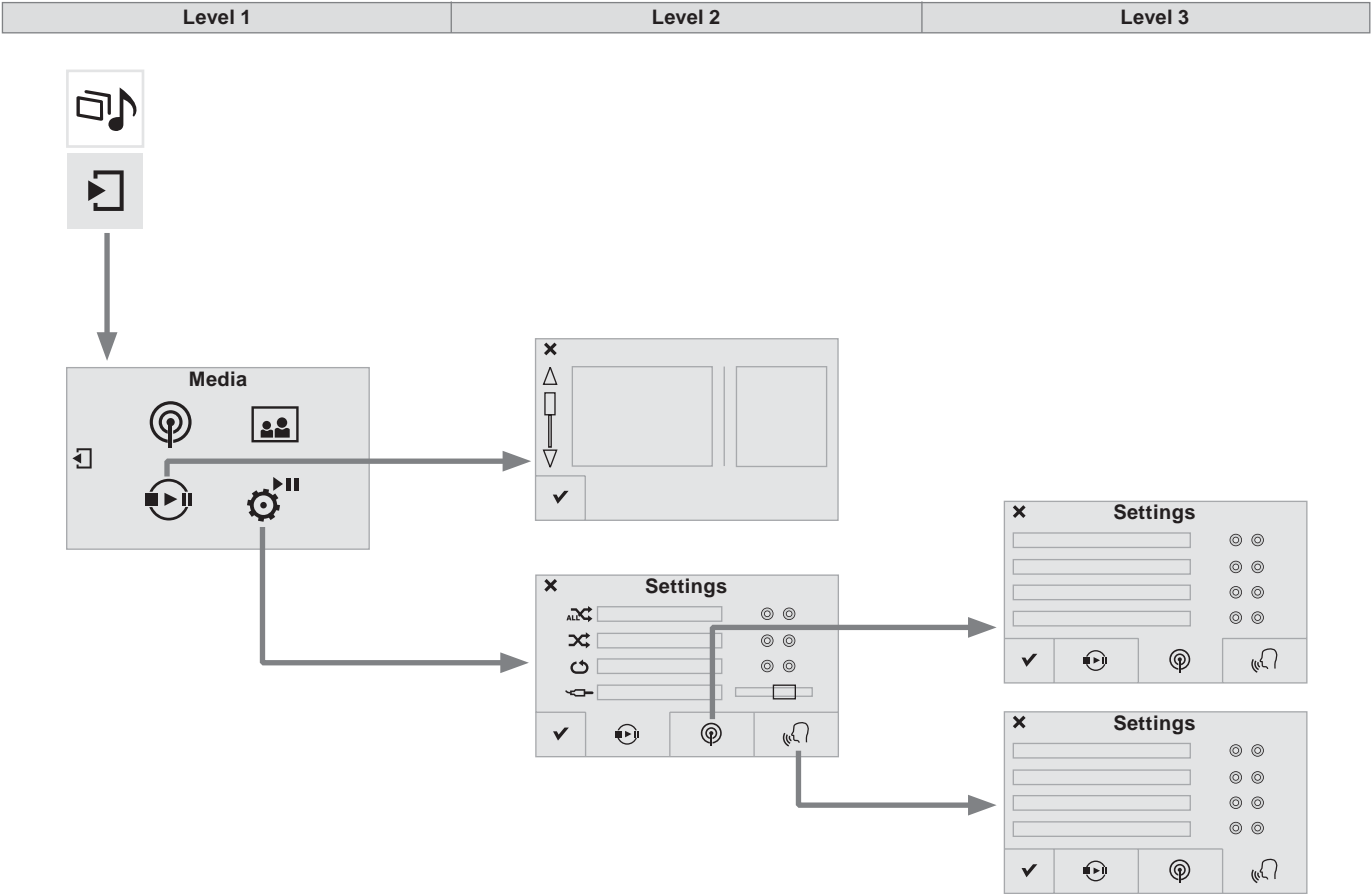













Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	Radio Media ↓ List		List of FM stations	Press on a radio station to select it.
 	Radio Media ↓ Source	 <b>FM Radio</b>  <b>DAB Radio</b>  <b>AM Radio</b>  <b>USB</b>  <b>MirrorLink</b>  <b>CarPlay</b>  <b>iPod</b>  <b>Bluetooth</b>  <b>AUX</b>		Select change of source.
 	Radio Media ↓ Save (preset)			Press an empty location to Save it.





Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	<b>Radio Media</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Radio list</b>		<b>Save</b>			Press a radio station to select it.
			<b>Update list</b>			Update the list of stations received.
			<b>Frequency</b>			Enter the desired radio frequency.
			<b>Confirm</b>			Save the settings.
  	<b>Radio Media</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Photos</b>		<b>Home screen</b>			Display the selected photo in the home page.
			<b>Rotate</b>			Rotate the photo 90°.
			<b>Select all</b>			Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
			<b>Slideshow</b>		Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
					Pause / Play.	
					Next photo.	
			<b>Full screen</b>			Display the selected photo full-screen.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	<b>Radio Media</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Media list</b>					Presentation of the last media used.
	<b>Radio Media</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Settings</b>		<b>Media</b> ↓ <b>Settings</b>	 Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.	
				 Shuffle (current album)		
				 Repeat		
				 Aux. amplification		
			<b>Radio</b> ↓ <b>Settings</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.	
				<input type="checkbox"/> DAB/FM station tracking		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Display Radio Text		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Digital radio slideshow display		
			<b>Announcements</b> ↓ <b>Settings</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.	
				<input type="checkbox"/> News - Weather		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Sport - Programm info		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Flash - Unforeseen events		
			<b>Confirm</b>		Save the settings.	

# Radio

## Selecting a station



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or



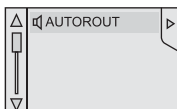
Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.



Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.



If necessary, select change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

**!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

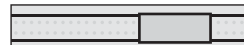
## Changing a radio frequency



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



**By automatic frequency search**



Press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

**THEN**



Select change source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then **"Confirm"**.

FRANCE BLEU

### Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on **"Save"** (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

## Recalling preset stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select **"Save"** (preset).

## Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.



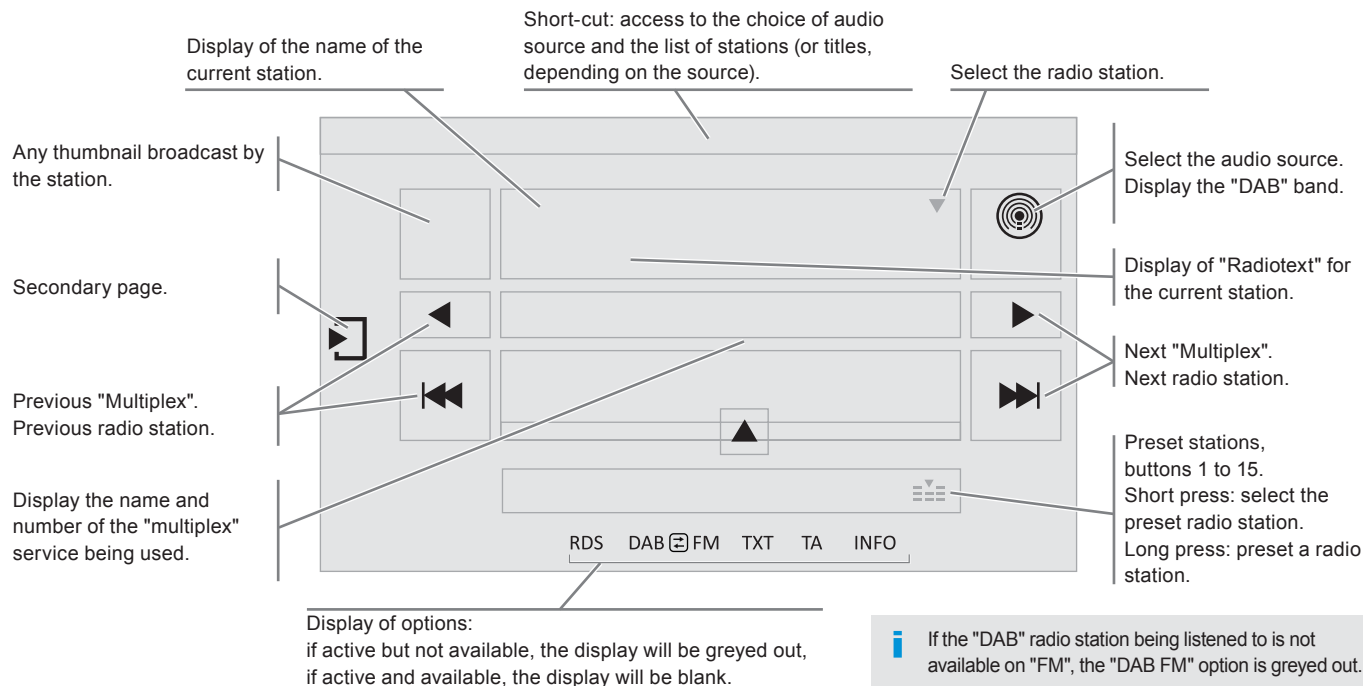
Select **"Radio"**.

Off ☐ On

Activate/deactivate **"RDS options"**.

**i** RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

# DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



## Digital radio

- !** Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.  
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

## DAB / FM auto tracking

- i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.  
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

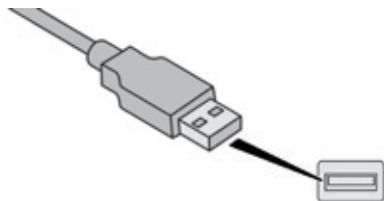
- i** If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.  
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".



If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

# Media

## USB player



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

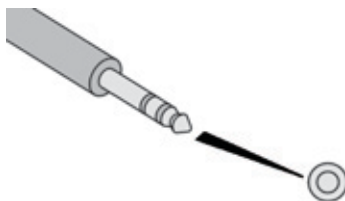
**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

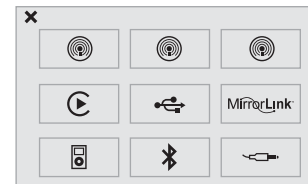
## Selection of source



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Choose the source.

## Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.

".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type. The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

**!** The system supports USB mass storage portable players, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied. Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripheral devices, not recognised by the system on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

**i** It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

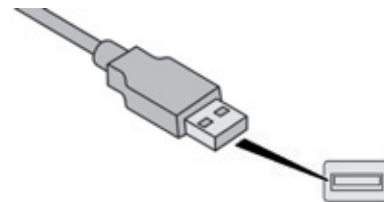
Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**". Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

**!** Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source. It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

## Connecting Apple® players

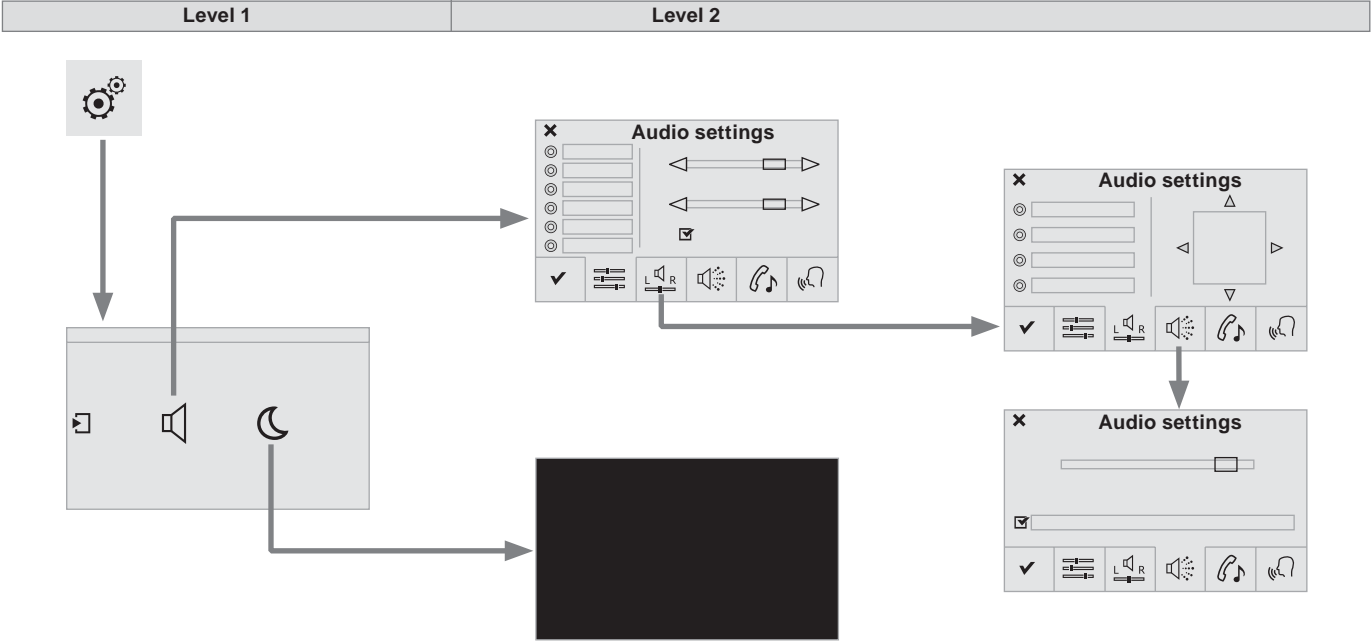













Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically. Control is via the audio system.

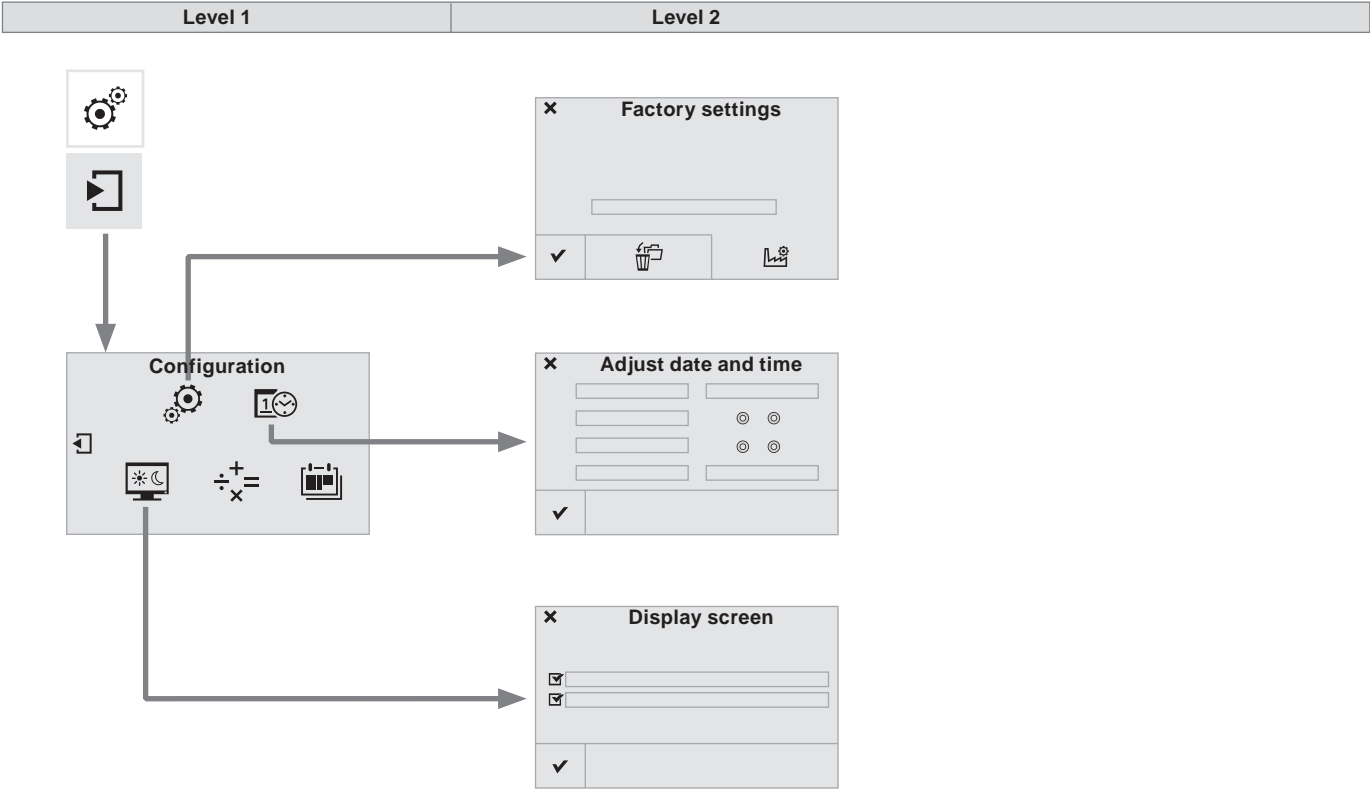
**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts). The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.












The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

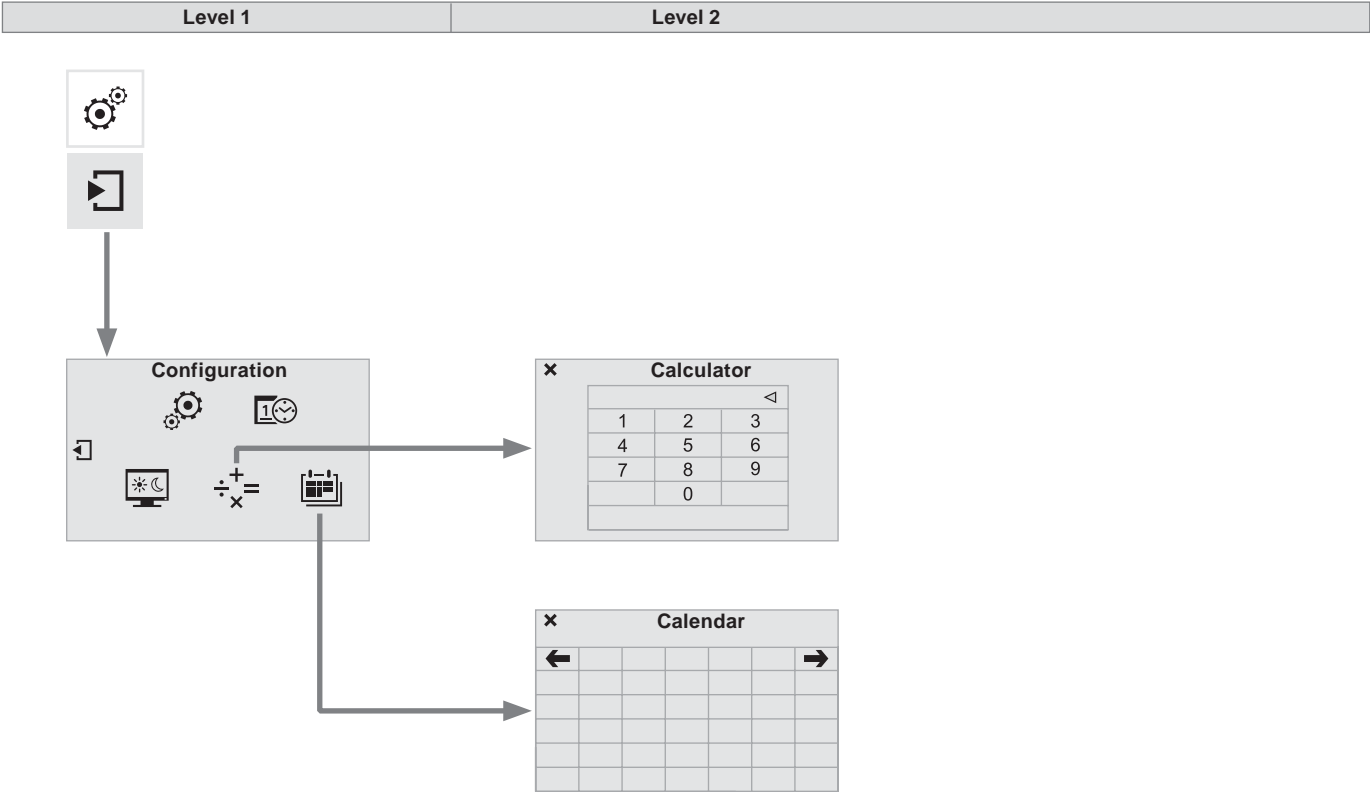
# Settings









Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Audio settings</b>		<b>Ambience</b>	Choose the sound ambience.
			<b>Balance</b>	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			<b>Sound effects</b>	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			<b>Ringtones</b>	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			<b>Voice</b>	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.
			<b>Confirm</b>	Save your settings.
 	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Turn off screen</b>			Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	<b>Settings</b>		<b>Delete data</b>	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
	<b>Secondary page</b>		<b>Factory settings</b>	Return to factory settings.
	<b>System Settings</b>	✓	<b>Confirm</b>	Save the settings.
	<b>Settings</b>	✓	<b>Confirm</b>	Set the date and time then confirm.
	<b>Secondary page</b>			
	<b>Time/Date</b>			
	<b>Settings</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>Activate automatic text scrolling</b>	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
	<b>Secondary page</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>Activate animations</b>	
	<b>Screen settings</b>	✓	<b>Confirm</b>	



Level 1		Level 2	Comments
  	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Calculator</b>		Select the calculator.
  	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Secondary page</b> ↓ <b>Calendar</b>		Select the calendar.

## Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**".

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

**!** The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

**!** The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble**, and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source. The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

- !**
- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiances)
  - "**Bass**:"
  - "**Treble**:"
  - "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
  - "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
  - "**Audible response from touch screen**"
  - "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

**i** On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.



## Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, the synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.



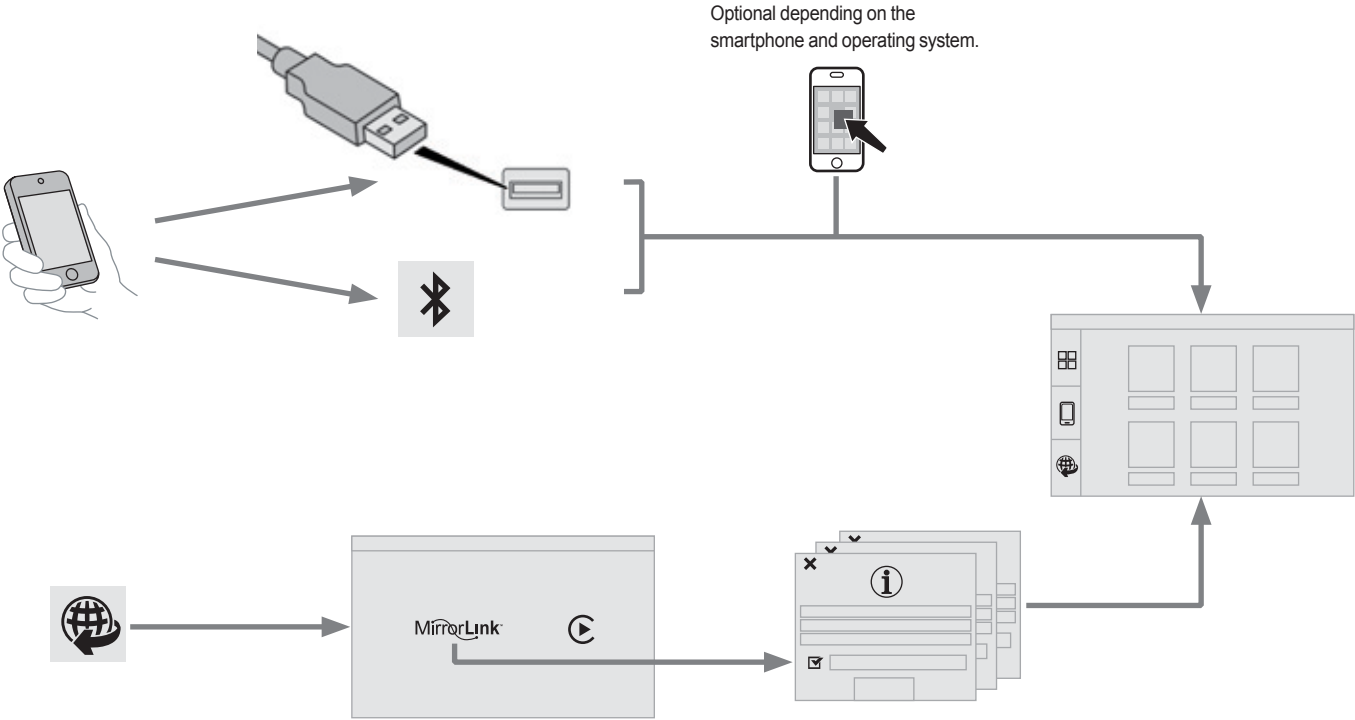
Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

# Connected services

## MirrorLink™



## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen. The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** Please note:

- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and end the connection.

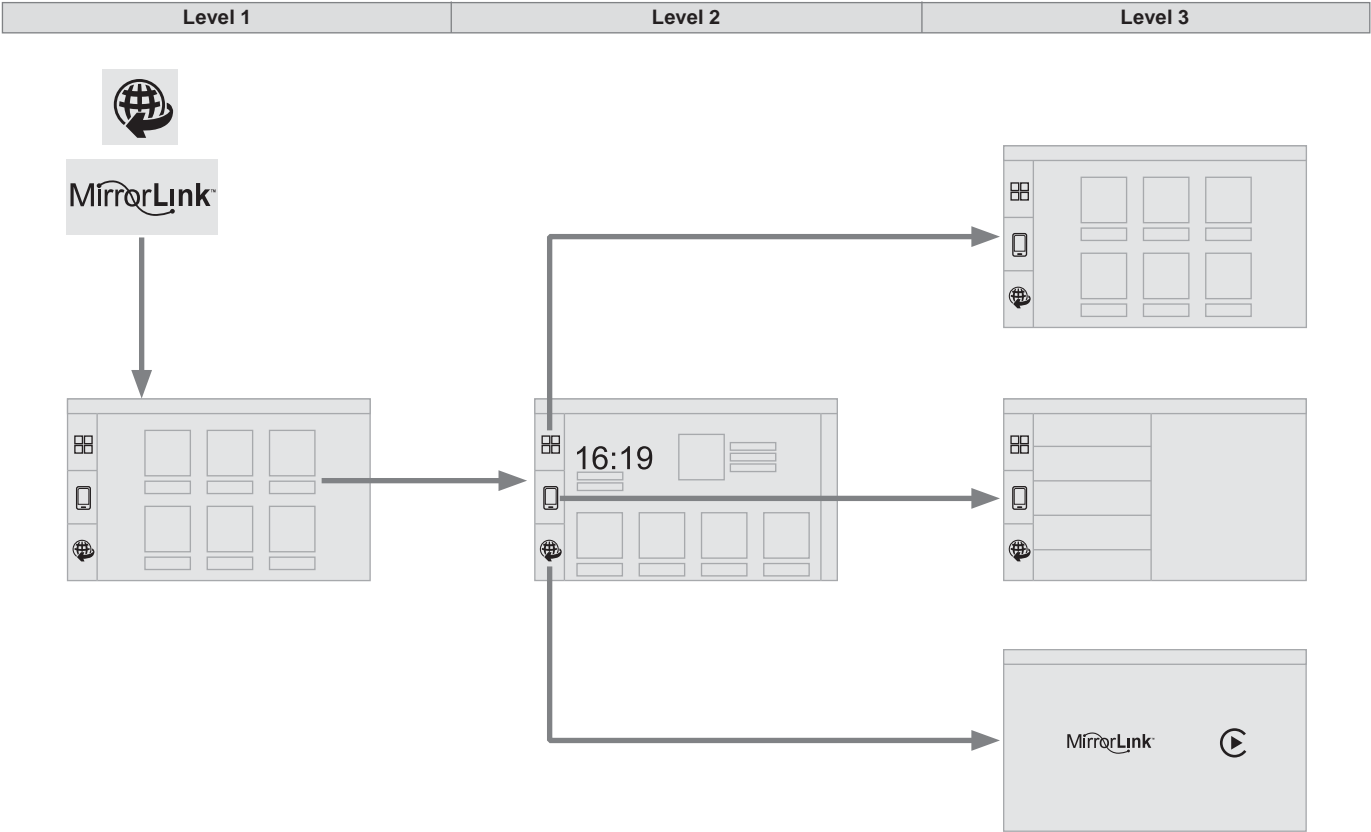
Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology. If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.







Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

## Voice recognition

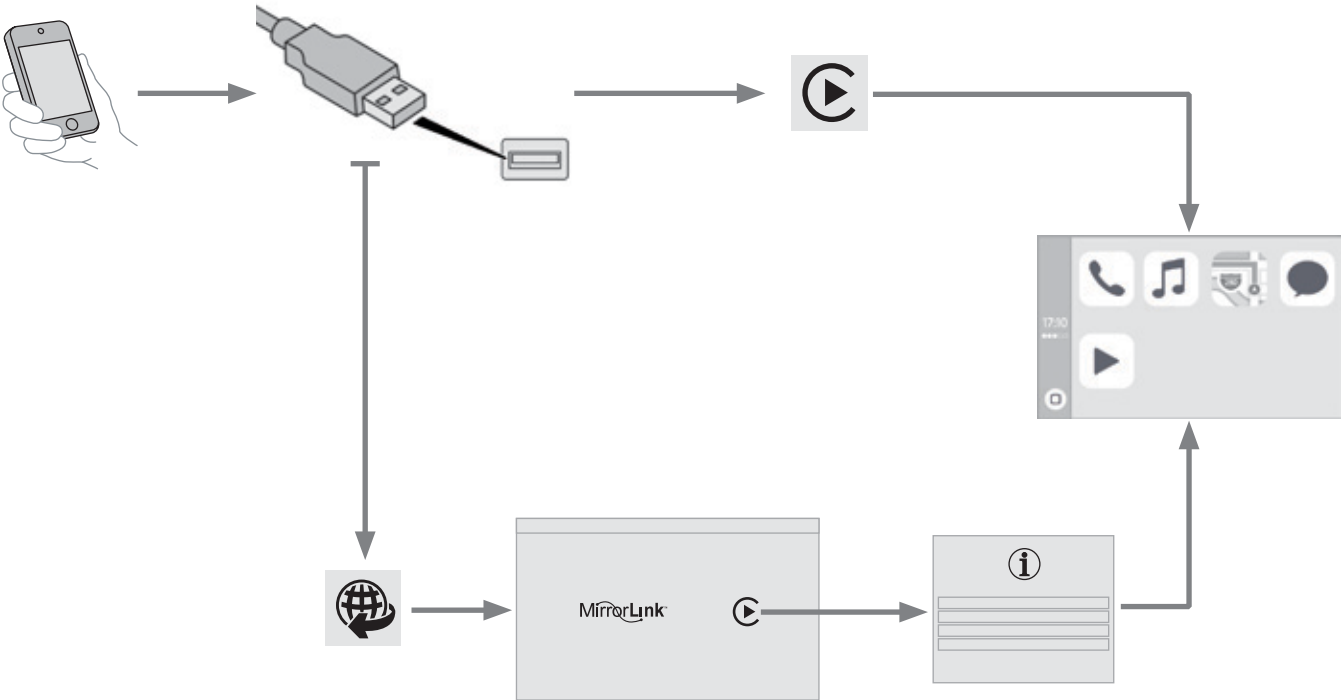
Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<p><b>Connected services</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>MirrorLink™</b></p>					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

# CarPlay®



## CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed on the vehicle's screen. As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

**i** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the **"Telephone"** function changes to **"CarPlay"** in the menu carousel. Press on **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press on **"Connected services"** to display the primary page.



Press on **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the telephone menu is displayed, connection of the USB cable causes the display to automatically change to CarPlay mode.

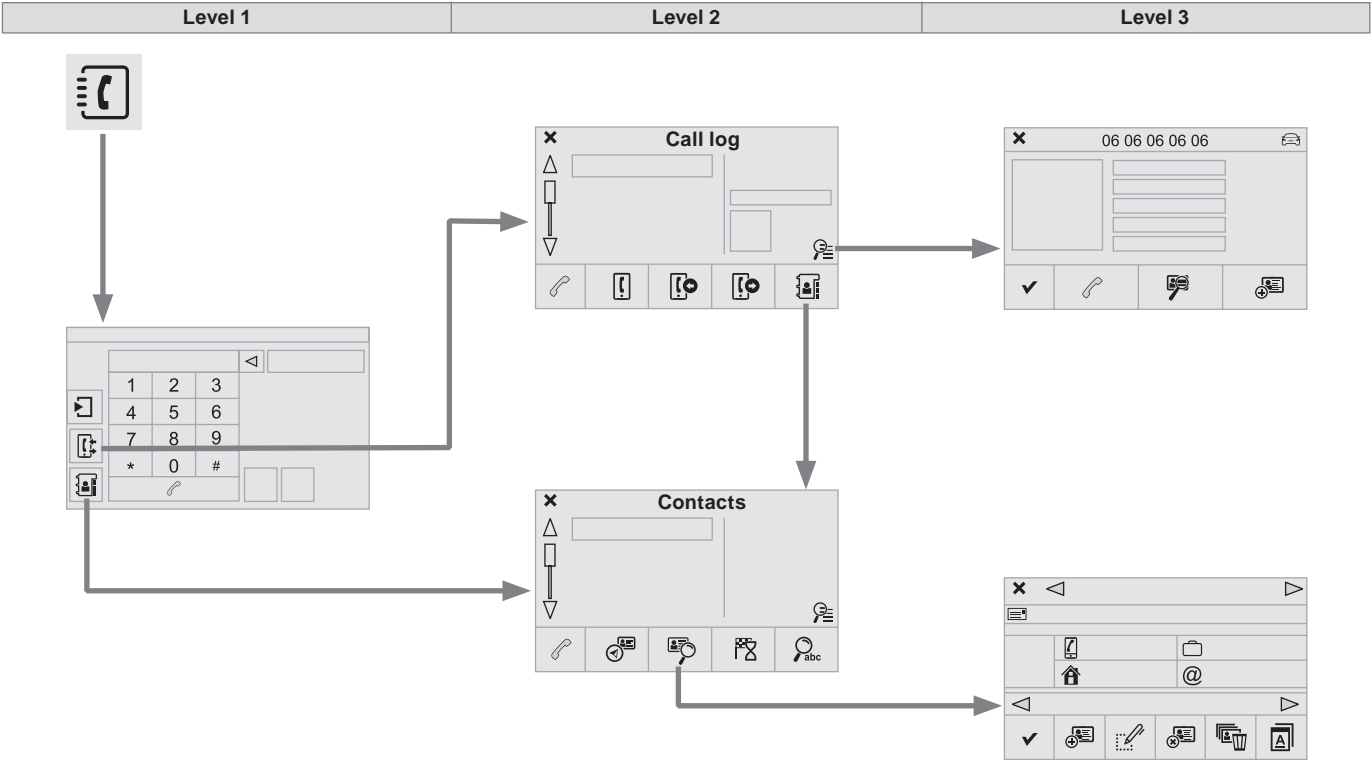
When another menu is displayed, on connection of a USB cable a message is displayed in the upper bar, indicating that CarPlay mode has been activated. Press Open to display CarPlay mode.

## Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

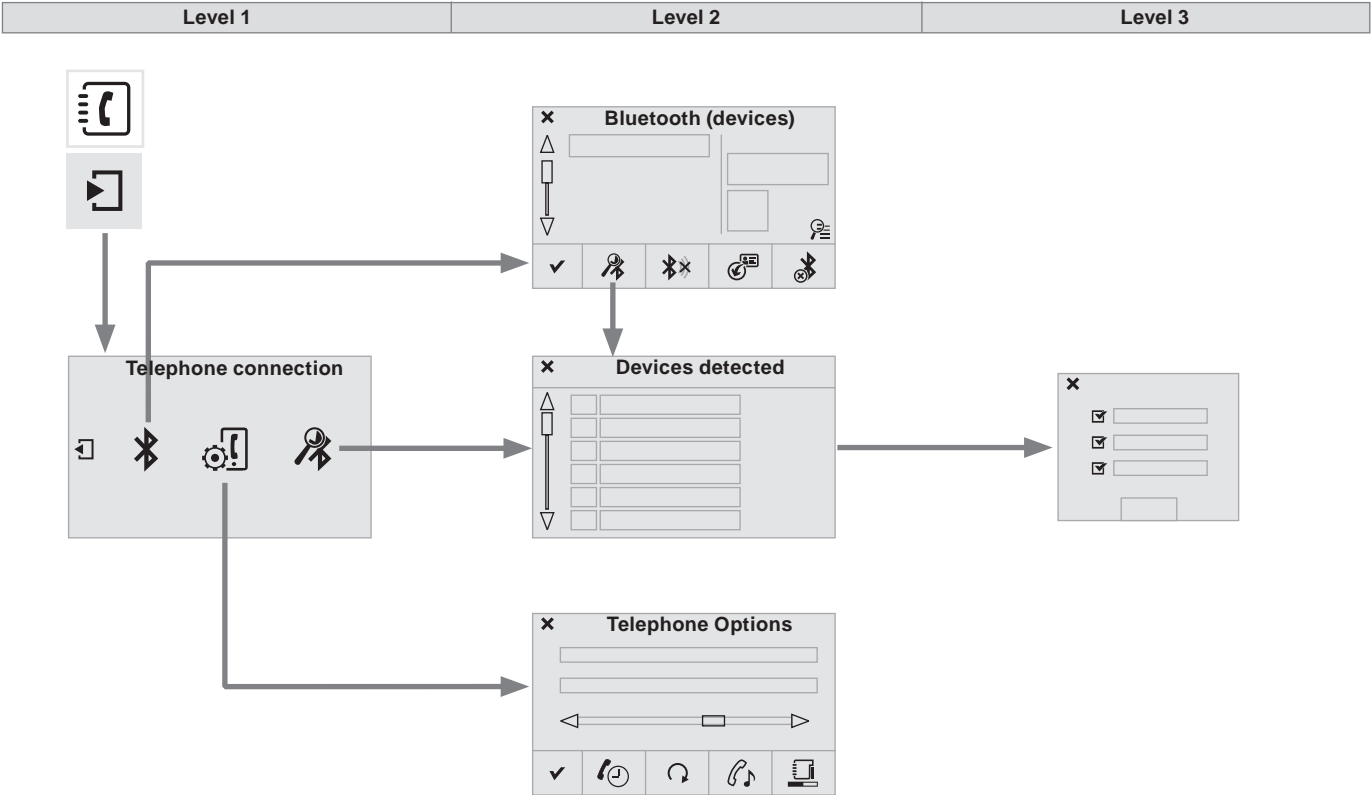
**i** During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.


















# Telephone





Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
<div><div>☎</div><div>📞</div></div>	<div>Telephone</div> <div>↓</div> <div>Call log</div>	<div>📞</div>	All calls			After making choices, start the call.
		<div>📞📞</div>	Incoming calls			
		<div>📞📞</div>	Outgoing calls			
		<div>👤📞</div>	Contacts			
		<div>🔍</div>	Magnifying glass	<div>🔍📞</div>	View	
				<div>🔍📞</div>	Create	
		<div>📞</div>	Call			
<div><div>☎</div><div>👤</div></div>	<div>Telephone</div> <div>↓</div> <div>Contacts</div>	<div>👤📞</div>	Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
		<div>🔍📞</div>	View	<div>👤📞</div>	Create	
				<div>✎📞</div>	Modify	
				<div>👤📞</div>	Delete	
				<div>🗑📞</div>	Delete all	
				<div>📄📞</div>	By name	
				<div>✓📞</div>	Confirm	
		<div>🕒📞</div>	Navigate to			
		<div>🔍📞</div>	Search for contact			
		<div>📞</div>	Call			



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Bluetooth connection	 Search				Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
		 Connect / Disconnect				Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
		 Update				Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
		 Delete				Delete the selected telephone.
		✓ Confirm				Save the settings.
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for devices			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telephone		Start the search for peripheral devices.
		Devices detected		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio streaming		
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Internet		
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Telephone Options	 Put on hold				Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
		 Update				Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
		 Ringtones				Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
		 Memory info.				Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
		✓ Confirm				Save the settings.

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

### Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.



Enter this same code in the system, select **"OK"** and confirm.

### Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search for devices"**.  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and **"Confirm"**.



Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then **"Confirm"**.

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in **"Audio streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in **"Internet"** (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

**!** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

**!** The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk) for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

**!** Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select **"Update"**.

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth® activated).

To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

## Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

### Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

### Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth"** to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on **"Search for devices"**.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

## Managing paired telephones

**i** This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

## Making a call

**!** Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

### Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad. Press "**Call**" to start the call.

### Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

## Managing contacts / entries



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

### Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

## Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

### Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The navigation settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Hazard zone audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Accident-prone area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Hazard zone positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Hazard zone located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Accident-prone area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.



QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has completed starting up, so that there is GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

## Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press the "Update list" function in the system.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

## Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth® profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a sound distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "Linear", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

## Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth® telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth® function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth® function is switched on.</li> <li>- Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".</li> </ul>
	The Bluetooth® telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at <a href="http://www.citroen.co.uk">www.citroen.co.uk</a> (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth® mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth® mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

# MAGNETI MARELLI

MM-BTEL  
SMEG+ IV2

E2 10R-04 14155

CE 0682

COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111

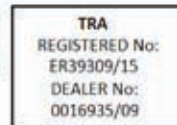
La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.  
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment).  
이 기기는 업무용(산업) 전자파 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가전제품의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.  
MSIP -CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2

סמך אישור אלהותי של שידור התקשורת הוא 51-52173

אסוף להחליף את האנטנה הסדורית של הספיקר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר



INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic

CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190

Aprobado CNC C-14786

INCM: 16EBP15

TRC/SS/2015/258



005-101030  
AD15-0101005



41554/SDPPI/2015  
5142



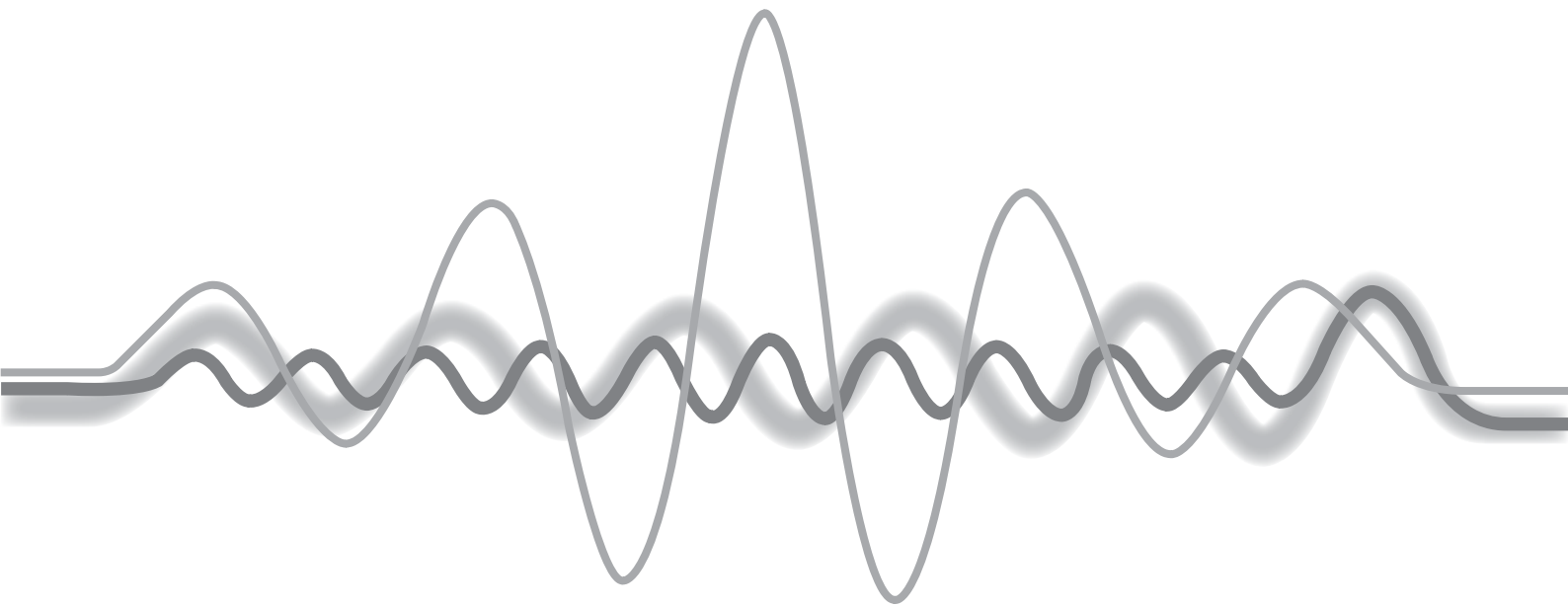
Agree par l'ARPT.  
Référence d'agrément :  
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

PD 2795

OMAN - TRA  
TA-R/2604/15  
D100428

Complies with  
IDA Standards  
DA105282





# Audio system

## Audio system / Bluetooth®



	Contents
First steps	316
Steering mounted controls	317
Menus	318
Radio	318
Media	320
Telephone	324
Screen menu map(s)	326
Frequently asked questions	329

**i** Your Audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

# First steps



On / Off, volume setting.

**SOURCE**

Select source:  
Radio; USB; AUX; CD; Streaming.



Audio settings:  
Front/rear fader, left/right balance,  
bass/treble, loudness, audio  
ambiences.

**LIST  
REFRESH**

Display the list of local stations.  
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders  
(CD / USB).

**MODE**

Select the screen display mode:  
Date, audio functions, trip computer,  
telephone.

**DARK**

The DARK button changes the  
screen display for improved driving  
comfort at night.  
1<sup>st</sup> press: upper bar only illuminated.  
2<sup>nd</sup> press: black screen.  
3<sup>rd</sup> press: return to standard display.



Abandon the current operation.

**MENU**

Display main menu.

**1**

Buttons 1 to 6  
Select a pre-set radio station.  
Long press: pre-set a station.



Automatic frequency search down/  
up.  
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or  
USB track.



Select next frequency down/up.  
Select previous/next MP3 folder.  
Select previous/next folder / genre /  
artist / playlist (USB).

**OK**

Confirm.

**TA / PTY**

TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.  
Long press: PTY\* (radio Programme  
Type).



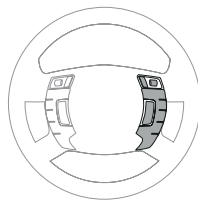
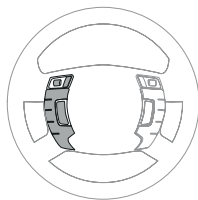
Eject CD.

**BAND  
AST**

Select AM / FM wavebands.

\* Available according to version.

# Steering mounted controls



Activate/deactivate "Black Panel" - black screen mode (night driving).



Telephone: make a call.  
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (display the calls log).  
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call.



Radio, rotate: select the previous / next preset station.  
Media, rotate: select the genre / artist / folder in the classification list.  
Press: Access to short-cut menus depending on the display in the screen, confirm a selection.



Abandon the current operation.  
Go up one level (menu or folder).

**MENU**

Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
Media: select the next track.  
Media, press and hold: fast forward.



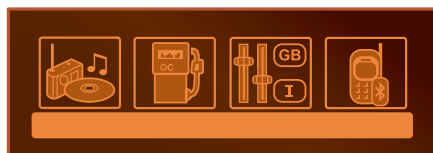
Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.  
Media: select the previous track.  
Media, press and hold: rewind.

**LIST**

Radio: display the list of stations.  
Media: display the list of tracks.  
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

# Menus

## Screen C



### Audio functions

Radio; CD; USB; AUX.



### Trip computer

Enter distances; Alerts; State of functions.



### Bluetooth®: Telephone - Audio

Pairing; Hands-free kit; Streaming.



### Personalisation-configuration

Vehicle parameters; Display; Languages.

**i** For an overview of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

# Radio

## Selecting a station

### SOURCE

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select the radio.

### BAND AST

Press the **BAND AST** button to select a waveband.



Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

### LIST REFRESH

Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum). To update this list, press for more than two seconds.

## RDS

**i** The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

**MENU**

Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Audio functions**".

**OK**

Press **OK**.



Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

**OK**

Press **OK**.



Select "**Activate RDS**".

**OK**

Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

In "**Radio**" mode, press **OK** directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.



RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

## Receiving TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

**TA / PTY**

Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

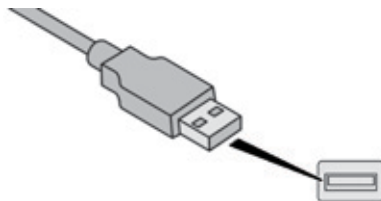
# Media

## USB player



This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on model.

**!** The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection. Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if the lists are not changed, the subsequent loading time is reduced.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.



Press and hold **REFRESH LIST** to display the different classifications.



Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".

**OK**

Press **OK** to select the classification required, then press **OK** again to confirm.



Press **REFRESH LIST** briefly to display the previously selected classification.



Navigate through the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

**OK**

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind.



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**" in the list.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, ...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **AUX**.

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

**!** Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

## CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.  
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.  
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

**SOURCE**

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

**LIST  
REFRESH**

Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind.

## Playing an MP3 CD compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

**!** On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played. While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

### SOURCE

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind play.

## Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u, etc.) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.



Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

**i** It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section.

Select in the "**Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**" menu the telephone to be connected. The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

**SOURCE** Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE** button\*.

Control of tracks to be played is via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls\*\*. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

\* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

\*\* If the telephone supports the function.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

# Telephone

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

### Screen C

(Available according to model and version)

**!** As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth® mobile telephone with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Go to [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk) for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

**MENU**

Press the **MENU** button.



In the menu, select:

- **"Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio"**
- **"Bluetooth configuration"**
- **"Perform a Bluetooth search"**

A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® device used.  
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

The **"Telephone"** menu permits access to the following functions in particular: **"Directory"**\*, **"Calls list"**, **"Consult the paired equipment"**.

Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.



A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.

**OK**

Confirm by pressing **OK**.

A message in the screen indicates the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with **OK**. If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.

A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured. The directory and the call list can be accessed after the necessary synchronisation period.

\* If your telephone is fully compatible.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the **YES** tab on the display using the buttons.

**OK**

Confirm by pressing **OK**.



Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

## Making a call

From the **"Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio"** menu.

Select **"Manage the telephone call"**.

Select **"Call"**.

Or

Select **"Calls list"**.

Or

Select **"Directory"**.



Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumbwheel.

Or

To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.

## Ending a call



During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth®.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth® you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

# Screen menu map(s)

## Screen C

**OK**

Press the **OK** dial for access to short-cut menus depending on the display on the screen.

### Radio

- 1 **activate / deactivate RDS**
- 1 **activate / deactivate REG mode**
- 1 **activate / deactivate radiotext**

### CD / MP3 CD

- 1 **activate / deactivate Intro**
- 1 **activate / deactivate track repeat**  
(the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)
- 1 **activate / deactivate random play**  
(the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

### USB

- 1 **activate / deactivate track repeat**  
(of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)
- 1 **activate / deactivate random play**  
(of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

## Screen C

**MENU**

Pressing the **MENU** button displays:



### Audio functions

- 1 **Audio functions**
- 2 **FM preferences**
- 3 Alternative frequencies (RDS)
- 4 Activate / deactivate
- 3 Regional mode (REG)
- 4 Activate / deactivate
- 3 Radio-text information (RDTXT)
- 4 Activate / deactivate

- 2 **Play modes**
- 3 Album repeat (RPT)
- 4 Activate / deactivate
- 3 Track random play (RDM)
- 4 Activate / deactivate



### Personalisation-configuration

- 1 **Display configuration**
- 2 **Brightness-video adjustment**
- 3 Normal video
- 3 Inverse video
- 3 Brightness (- +) adjustment
- 2 **Date and time adjustment**
- 3 Setting the day / month / year
- 3 Setting the hour / minute
- 3 Choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
- 2 **Choice of units**
- 3 l/100 km - mpg - km/l
- 3 °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- 1 **Choice of language**



## Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio

### 1 Bluetooth configuration

2 Connect/Disconnect an equipment

2 Telephone function

2 Audio Streaming function

3 Consult the paired equipment

3 Delete a paired equipment

3 Perform a Bluetooth search

### 1 Call

2 Calls list

3 Directory

### 1 Manage the telephone call

2 Terminate the current call

2 Activate secret mode

# Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

## Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.



## Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth® connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul>
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	

## A

Accessories .....	144
AdBlue® additive .....	32, 195, 196, 200
Adjusting headlamps .....	137
Adjusting head restraints .....	60, 68
Adjusting seat .....	60, 61
Adjusting the air distribution .....	72
Adjusting the air flow .....	72
Adjusting the date .....	43
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel .....	65
Adjusting the seat belt height .....	151
Adjusting the temperature .....	72
Adjusting the time .....	43
Advice on driving .....	91, 180
Airbag, knee .....	157
Airbags .....	35
Airbags, curtain .....	156, 158
Airbags, front .....	158
Airbags, lateral .....	156, 158
Air conditioning .....	12
Air conditioning, automatic .....	71
Air conditioning, digital .....	72
Air conditioning, manual .....	71
Air vents .....	70
Alarm .....	49
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) .....	147
Anti-pinch .....	52, 79
Anti-slip regulation (ASR) .....	148, 150
Anti-theft .....	92
Armrest, front .....	83
Armrest, rear .....	84
Assistance call .....	146, 250

Audio streaming (Bluetooth®) .....	282, 283, 323
Audio system .....	116, 315
Auxiliary .....	282

## B

Battery .....	179, 192, 235-238
Battery, charging .....	237
Battery, remote control .....	47, 48
Blanking screen (snow shield) .....	184
Blind, panoramic sunroof .....	79
Blinds, side .....	85
BlueHDi .....	195, 196
Bluetooth® (hands-free) .....	302, 303, 324
Bluetooth® (telephone) .....	302, 303
Bolts, wheel security .....	214
Bonnet .....	185
Boot .....	57, 58
Boot (fittings) .....	86, 87
Brake discs .....	194
Brake lamps .....	222, 224
Brakes .....	194
Braking assistance system .....	147
Bulbs (changing) .....	218, 222, 224, 227

## C

Cable, audio .....	282
Cable, jack .....	282
Capacity, fuel tank .....	175
Cap, fuel filler .....	175
CarPlay® connection .....	297
CD, MP3 .....	282, 321, 322
Central locking .....	45, 54
Changing a bulb .....	218, 222, 224, 227
Changing a fuse .....	229
Changing a wheel .....	211
Changing a wiper blade .....	143
Changing the remote control battery .....	47
CHECK .....	20
Checking the engine oil level .....	24
Checking the levels .....	188, 190, 191
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) .....	204
Checks .....	186, 187, 192, 194
Child lock .....	52, 173
Children .....	166, 171, 172
Child seats .....	153, 159-161, 165, 168
Child seats, conventional .....	165, 166
Child seats, ISOFIX .....	169, 171, 172
CITROËN Connect Box .....	250
CITROËN Localised Emergency Call .....	250
Closing the boot .....	45
Closing the doors .....	45, 54
Compressor, tyre inflation .....	204
Configuration, vehicle .....	15, 37, 41, 326
Connection, Bluetooth® .....	302, 303
Connection, MirrorLink® .....	292, 294
Control, electric windows .....	52
Control, emergency boot release .....	57

Control, emergency door .....	56
Control, heated seats .....	62
Control, panoramic sunroof blind .....	79
Control stalk, lighting .....	132
Control stalk, wipers .....	140-142
Courtesy lamps .....	76
Cruise control .....	121
Cup holder .....	83, 84

Driving positions (storing) .....	64
Dynamic stability control (DSC) .....	29, 148, 150

## D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio .....	280, 281
Date (setting) .....	37, 43
Daytime running lamps .....	135, 218
Deactivating ESP .....	149
Deactivating the passenger airbag .....	155, 162
Deadlocking .....	46
Demisting / Defrosting .....	72
Demisting / Defrosting, rear screen .....	72
Dimensions .....	245
Dipstick .....	24, 188
Direction indicators .....	145, 218, 224
Display screen, instrument panel .....	14, 17, 109
Display screen, multifunction .....	37
Doors .....	54
Driving economically .....	12

## E

Eco-driving (advice) .....	12
Economy mode .....	179
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) .....	147
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) .....	147
Emergency call .....	146, 250
Emergency warning lamps .....	145
Emissions control system, SCR .....	33
Energy economy mode .....	179
Engine compartment .....	186, 187
Engines, Diesel .....	176, 187, 243, 244
Engines, petrol .....	176, 186, 241, 242
Environment .....	12, 48

## F

Filling the fuel tank .....	175-177
Filter, air .....	192
Filter, oil .....	192
Filter, particle .....	191, 193

Filter, passenger compartment .....	192
Fitting a wheel .....	214
Fitting roof bars .....	182
Fittings, boot .....	86, 87
Fittings, interior .....	81
Fittings, rear .....	84
Flap, fuel filler .....	175, 177
Flashing indicators .....	145
Foglamps, front .....	133
Foglamps, rear .....	133, 222, 224
Folding the rear seats .....	68
Frequency (radio) .....	278, 279
Fuel .....	12, 175, 176
Fuel consumption .....	12
Fuel tank .....	177
Fusebox, dashboard .....	229
Fusebox, engine compartment .....	229
Fuses .....	229

## G

Gauge, fuel .....	21, 175
Gearbox, automatic .....	12, 105, 110, 193, 235
Gearbox, electronic .....	12
Gearbox, manual .....	12, 104, 110, 193
Gear shift indicator .....	109
Gear lever .....	12
Gear lever, automatic gearbox .....	105
Gear lever, manual gearbox .....	104
Glove box .....	81

## H

Hazard warning lamps .....	145
Headlamp adjustment .....	137
Headlamps, automatic illumination .....	133, 136
Headlamps, dipped beam .....	132, 218
Headlamps, directional .....	137, 139
Headlamps, main beam .....	132, 218
Headlamps, Xenon .....	218
Headlamp wash .....	141
Head restraints, front .....	60, 62
Head restraints, rear .....	68
Heating .....	12
Hill start assist .....	103
Horn .....	116, 146

## I

Identification, vehicle .....	249
Ignition .....	94
Immobiliser, electronic .....	48, 92
Indicator, AdBlue® range .....	196
Indicator, coolant temperature .....	21
Indicator, engine oil level .....	24
Indicator, engine oil temperature .....	21
Indicator lamps, operation .....	29, 34, 36
Indicators, direction .....	145
Inflating tyres .....	12, 204
Instrument panels .....	14
Isofix mountings .....	169

## J

Jack .....	211, 282
Jump starting .....	236

## K

Key with remote control .....	44, 45, 48, 92
Kit, hands-free .....	302, 303, 324
Kit, temporary puncture repair .....	204

## L

Labels, identification .....	249
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) .....	124
Level, brake fluid .....	190
Level, Diesel additive .....	191
Level, engine coolant .....	21, 190
Level, engine oil .....	24, 188
Level, headlamp wash .....	191
Level, power steering fluid .....	190
Levels and checks .....	186-188, 190, 191
Level, screenwash fluid .....	191

Lighting .....	77
Lighting, dashboard .....	25
Lighting dimmer .....	25
Lighting, directional .....	138, 139
Lighting, guide-me home .....	135, 136
Lighting, interior .....	76
Lighting, mood .....	77
Lighting, welcome .....	77
Loading .....	12
Localised Assistance Call .....	250
Locating your vehicle .....	47
Locking from the inside .....	54
Log, alerts .....	20
Luggage cover .....	88

## M

Maintenance, routine .....	12
Map reading lamps .....	76
Markings, identification .....	249
Massage function .....	63
Mat .....	82
Menu .....	258, 260, 264, 272, 274, 276, 284, 286, 288, 298, 300
Menu, main .....	15, 318
Menus (audio) .....	272, 274, 276
Menus (Touch screen tablet) .....	253, 257
Mirror, rear view .....	67

Mirrors, door.....	66
Misfuel prevention.....	177
Mountings, Isofix.....	169
MP3 CD.....	322

## N

Navigation .....	258, 260, 264
Net, high load retaining.....	89
Number plate lamps.....	226

## O

Oil change.....	188
Oil consumption.....	188
Oil, engine.....	188
Opening the bonnet.....	185
Opening the boot.....	44
Opening the doors.....	44, 54
Opening the fuel filler flap.....	175
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind.....	79

## P

Pads, brake.....	194
Paint colour code.....	249
Panoramic glass sunroof.....	79
Parking brake.....	95, 96, 194
Parking brake, electric.....	28, 96
Parking sensors, front.....	127
Parking sensors, rear.....	127
Parking space sensor .....	125
Plates, identification.....	249
Player, Apple®.....	283, 323
Player, MP3 CD.....	321, 322
Player, USB.....	282, 320
Port, USB.....	83, 282, 320
Pressures, tyres.....	205, 249
Pre-tensioning seat belts.....	153
Priming the fuel system .....	203
Protecting children .....	159-161, 166, 169, 171, 172
Puncture.....	204

## R

Radio.....	278, 279, 282, 318
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB).....	280, 281
Range, AdBlue®.....	196, 197
RDS.....	279
Reading lamps, rear.....	76
Recharging the battery.....	237

Recirculation, air.....	72
Regeneration of the particle filter.....	193
Reinitialising the electric windows.....	52
Reinitialising the remote control .....	47
Reminder, key in ignition.....	94
Reminder, lighting on.....	134
Remote control.....	44, 45, 48
Removing a wheel .....	214
Removing the mat.....	82
Replacing bulbs.....	218, 222, 224, 227
Replacing fuses.....	229
Replacing the air filter.....	192
Replacing the oil filter .....	192
Replacing the passenger compartment filter.....	192
Reservoir, headlamp wash .....	191
Reservoir, screenwash.....	191
Resetting the service indicator.....	23
Resetting the trip recorder.....	25
Rev counter.....	14
Reversing camera.....	129
Reversing lamp.....	222, 224
Risk areas (update).....	269
Roof bars.....	182
Running out of fuel (Diesel).....	203

## S

Safety, children .....	159-162, 166, 169, 172
Screen, cold climate .....	184

Screen, instrument panel..... 15, 17, 20, 116  
Screen menu map..... 258, 260, 264, 272,  
274, 276, 284, 286, 288, 298, 300, 326  
Screen, monochrome C..... 37, 318, 326  
Screenwash, front..... 141  
Screenwash, rear..... 141  
SCR (Selective Catalytic  
Reduction) ..... 195  
Seat belts ..... 151-153, 165  
Seats, front..... 60, 61, 64  
Seats, heated..... 60, 62  
Seats, rear..... 68  
Securing rings..... 86  
Serial number, vehicle ..... 249  
Service indicator ..... 22, 23  
Servicing ..... 12, 23  
Settings, equipment..... 15, 37, 41, 326  
Settings (Menus)..... 284, 286, 288  
Settings, system..... 291  
Sidelamps ..... 132, 218, 222, 224  
Side repeater ..... 218  
Ski flap ..... 85  
Snow chains..... 178  
SNOW MOTION..... 148  
Socket, 12 volt accessory..... 84  
Socket, auxiliary..... 282, 321  
Socket, JACK..... 83, 282, 321  
Soft distribution..... 70  
Speed limiter ..... 118  
Speedometer ..... 14  
Starting the engine ..... 92  
Starting using another battery ..... 236  
Station, radio..... 278, 279  
Stay, bonnet..... 185

Steering mounted controls, audio ..... 256, 317  
Steering wheel, adjustment ..... 65  
Steering wheel, fixed centred controls..... 116  
Stopping the vehicle ..... 92  
Stop & Start..... 19, 35, 71, 75, 110,  
175, 185, 192, 235, 238  
Storage compartments ..... 81  
Storing driving positions ..... 64  
Sun visor ..... 81  
Suspension, electronic control ..... 130  
Suspension, Hydractive III+..... 130  
Switching off the engine ..... 92  
Synchronising the remote control..... 47

## T

Table of weights ..... 242, 244  
Tables of engines..... 241, 243  
Tables of fuses..... 229  
Tank, fuel..... 175, 177  
Technical data..... 241-245  
Telephone ..... 298, 300, 302-304, 324  
Temperature, coolant..... 21  
Three flashes (direction indicators) ..... 145  
Time (setting) ..... 37, 43  
TMC (Traffic info)..... 270  
Tools..... 204, 211  
Total distance recorder..... 25

Touch screen tablet ..... 18, 39, 41, 42, 116  
Touch screen tablet  
(Menu)..... 18, 39, 41, 42, 253, 257  
Towbar..... 180  
Towed loads ..... 242, 244  
Towing another vehicle ..... 239  
Towing eye ..... 239  
Traction control (ASR) ..... 29, 148  
Traffic information (TA) ..... 271, 319  
Traffic information (TMC)..... 270  
Trailer ..... 180  
Trajectory control systems..... 148  
Trip computer ..... 17-19  
Trip distance recorder..... 25  
Trip reset ..... 17, 18  
Tyres..... 12  
Tyre under-inflation detection ..... 114, 217

## U

Unlocking ..... 44  
Unlocking from the inside ..... 54  
Updating risk areas ..... 269  
Updating the date..... 43  
Updating the time..... 43  
USB..... 282, 322

---

## V

Ventilation .....	12, 70, 71
Very cold protection .....	183
Voice recognition .....	293, 297

---

## W

Warning and indicator lamps .....	26, 28, 34, 36
Warning lamp, airbag .....	35
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system .....	33
Warning lamp, Service .....	27
Weights .....	242, 244
Welcome function .....	63
Wheel, spare .....	211, 217
Window controls .....	52
Wiper blades (changing) .....	143
Wiper, rear .....	141
Wipers .....	140, 142
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive .....	140, 142















Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4Dconcept  
Diadeis  
Interak

Printed in the EU  
Anglais

05-16

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France

Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com)

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



